

OS/390®



Distributed File Service SMB Administration Guide and Reference

NOTE!

Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in "Appendix F. Notices" on page 173.

Fourth Edition (March 2001)

This edition, SC24-5882-03, applies to Version 2 Release 10 of OS/390 Distributed File Service (program number 5647-A01) and to all subsequent releases until otherwise indicated in new editions. This edition replaces SC24-5882-02.

Order publications through your IBM representative or the IBM branch office serving your locality. Publications are not stocked at the address given below.

IBM welcomes your comments. A form for reader's comments may be provided at the back of this publication, or you may address your comments to the following address:

International Business Machines Corporation
Information Development, Dept. G60
1701 North Street
Endicott, NY, 13760-5553
United States of America

FAX (United States & Canada): 1+607+752+2327
FAX (Other Countries): Your International Access Code+1+607+752+2327

IBMLink™ (United States customers only): GDLVME(PUBRCF)
Internet e-mail: pubrcf@vnet.ibm.com
World Wide Web: <http://www.ibm.com/s390/os390/>

If you would like a reply, be sure to include your name, address, telephone number, or FAX number.

Make sure to include the following in you comment or note:

- Title and order number of this book
- Page number or topic related to your comment

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1999, 2001. All rights reserved.

US Government Users Restricted Rights - Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

About This Book	xi
Who Should Use This Book	xi
How This Book Is Organized	xi
Conventions Used in This Book	xi
Where to Find More Information	xii
Softcopy Publications	xiii
Internet Sources	xiii
Summary of Changes	xv
Part 1. OS/390 SMB Support Administration Guide	1
Chapter 1. An Overview of OS/390 SMB Support	3
OS/390 SMB Support Features	3
OS/390 SMB Processes	4
Shared Directories	4
Shared Printers	4
Command Structure and Help	4
Command Shortcuts	5
Receiving Help	6
Chapter 2. SMB Migration Considerations	7
New for each Release of SMB	7
Version 2 Release 8	7
Version 2 Release 9	7
Version 2 Release 10	8
Migration to New SMB Release	8
SMB Configuration File Considerations	11
Chapter 3. Post Installation Processing	13
SMB File/Print Server Installation and Configuration Steps	13
Defining SMB Administrators	16
Using dfs_cpfiles to Create Default DFS Configuration Files	16
Chapter 4. Managing OS/390 SMB Processes	19
Who can Start and Stop DFS Server Daemons?	21
Starting DFS Server Daemons	21
Stopping DFS	23
Viewing the Status of DFS Server Daemons	24
Starting DFS Server Daemons During IPL	25
Daemon Configuration File	25
How dfscntl Starts the DFS Server Daemons	26
Changing Environment Variables	27
Changing Mappings	27
Changing Shared Directories or Shared Printers	27
Changing the hfsattr or the rfstab	28
Changing the Infoprint Server DLL	28
Chapter 5. Networking Considerations	29

Chapter 6. Mapping SMB User IDs to OS/390 User IDs	31
Creating an smbmap File	31
Setting the _IOE_SMB_IDMAP Environment Variable	32
Modifying and Deleting Identity Mapping Entries	32
Determining the OS/390 User ID from the SMB User ID	32
How the SMB User ID is Determined	33
Chapter 7. Sharing Files	35
Sharing HFS Files	35
Exporting and Sharing HFS File Systems	35
smbtab, dfstab, and devtab Entries for HFS	37
Creating a Shared Directory for HFS	38
Removing a Shared Directory for HFS	40
Dynamic Export for HFS	40
File Data Translation for HFS	44
Authorization for HFS	45
Free Space for HFS	46
Sharing RFS Files	46
Exporting and Sharing RFS File Systems	46
smbtab, dfstab, and devtab Entries for RFS	48
Creating a Shared Directory for RFS	48
Removing a Shared Directory for RFS	49
File Data Translation for RFS	49
Authorization for RFS	50
Free Space for RFS	51
Logon Considerations	51
RACF DCE Segments for SMB Encrypted Password Support	52
Chapter 8. Sharing Printers	55
Creating a Shared Printer	55
Removing a Shared Printer	56
Print Data Translation	56
Authorization	56
Chapter 9. Locating the OS/390 SMB Server	57
Setting up to Use the OS/390 SMB Server	57
Windows 9x	57
Windows NT	59
Windows 2000	61
Windows 3.11 Client	63
OS/2 Client	63
Finding the OS/390 SMB Server	63
Windows 9x, Windows NT, or Windows 2000 Clients	63
Windows 3.11 Client	64
OS/2 Client	65
Chapter 10. Accessing Data	67
Using OS/390 SMB Server Shared Directories	67
Windows 9x or Windows NT	67
Windows 2000 Clients	68
Windows 3.11 Client	70
OS/2 Client	70
Accessing HFS Data	71

HFS Directory and File Name Case Sensitivity Considerations	71
HFS Symbolic Links	71
Accessing RFS Data	72
RFS Directory and File Name Considerations	72
Chapter 11. Accessing Printers	75
Accessing Shared Printers	75
Windows 9x Client	75
Windows NT Client	76
Windows 2000 Client	77
Windows 3.11 Client	77
Adding a Printer	78
Windows 9x Client	78
Windows NT Client	79
Windows 2000 Client	79
Displaying a Printer Queue	80
Using PC Client Print Drivers with OS/390 SMB Server Shared Printers	81
 Part 2. OS/390 SMB Support Reference	 83
 Chapter 12. OS/390 System Commands	 85
modify dfs processes	86
start dfs	89
stop dfs	91
 Chapter 13. Distributed File Service SMB Files	 93
Attributes File (rfstab)	94
devtab	103
dfstab	107
envar	109
hfsattr	110
ioepdcf	112
rfstab	115
smbidmap	116
smbtab	118
 Chapter 14. Distributed File Service SMB Commands	 121
dfsexport	122
dfsshare	126
smbpw	129
 Appendix A. Environment Variables in SMB	 131
 Appendix B. Additional Information Using the SMB Server	 145
Client Does Not Communicate	145
Windows NT 4.0	145
Windows 2000	146
Windows 95 or Windows 98	147
Windows 95 Client Does Not Allow Net Use Command	148
Windows NT Client Does Not Allow Net View Command	149
Editor or Word Processor Changes the Owner/Permissions of the HFS File	149
Editor or Word Processor Cannot Save a File to HFS	149
Different End Of Line Characters in Text Files	149
PC Clients Disconnect During High DASD I/O Activity	150

Appendix C. Using Both SMB and DCE DFS	151
Fileset IDs in dfstab	151
Crossing Local Mount Points	151
SMB Encrypted Passwords and DCE Single Sign-on	152
 Appendix D. Customizable Files	 153
 Appendix E. Using OS/390 Data Sets	 155
Mapping Between the PC Client's View and OS/390 Record Data	155
Mapping OS/390 Data Sets onto an RFS File System	155
Reading, Writing, and Creating OS/390 Data Sets	157
Sharing Data	157
Forcing a Data Set to be Freed by SMB	159
Refreshing RFS File Names	159
Special OS/390 Considerations for Record Data	160
Selecting an OS/390 Data Storage Format for Record Data	160
File Size Determination and Time Stamps	160
PC Client Caching	160
OS/390 Record File Names	160
Creating OS/390 Files	161
Overriding Data Set Creation Attributes	161
Preparing to Create an OS/390 File	162
Creating Physical Sequential Files	163
Creating Direct Access Files	163
Creating PDSs and PDSEs	163
Creating VSAM Files	166
Specifying Attributes Multiple Times	167
Exploiting SAM Striped Files	167
Handling of the File Size Value	168
Storage of the File Size Value	168
How the File Size Value is Generated	169
Handling of the Time Stamps	170
Time Stamps for System-Managed VSAM and PS Data Sets	170
Time Stamps for Non-System Managed PS and DS Data Sets	170
Time Stamps for Non-System Managed VSAM Data Sets	171
Time Stamps for PDSs and PDSEs	171
Setting Time Stamps	172
 Appendix F. Notices	 173
Programming Interface Information	174
Trademarks	174
 Bibliography	 175
 Index	 177
 Readers' Comments	 185

Figures

Figure 1. DFS Server Address Space	19
Figure 2. DFSKERN in a Separate Address Space	20
Figure 3. Daemon Configuration File	26

Tables

Table 1. Data Set Creation Attributes	95
Table 2. Processing Attributes	98
Table 3. Site Attributes	100
Table 4. OS/390 DFS Customizable Files	153

About This Book

The purpose of this book is to provide complete and detailed guidance and reference information. This information is used by system and network administrators working with the Server Message Block (SMB)¹ support of the IBM OS/390 Distributed File Service base element of OS/390.

OS/390 Distributed File Service includes an SMB function that is based on the X/Open SMB Version 2 specification and the IETF RFCs on Netbios over IP (RFC1001 and RFC1002).

The OS/390 Distributed File Service base element supports both Distributed Computing Environment (DCE) DFS file protocols and SMB file/print protocols. This book focuses on the SMB support of OS/390 Distributed File Service. If you are using only SMB protocols, then you should use this book. If you are using DCE DFS protocols, then you need to refer to the *OS/390 Distributed File Service Administration Guide and Reference*. If you are using both protocols (DCE DFS and SMB), you may need to refer to both books.

Who Should Use This Book

This book is intended for users and network and system administrators who understand the basic concepts of data communications. A knowledge of Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) communications, UNIX operating system concepts, and Microsoft Windows (referred to as Windows throughout this book) operating system concepts can help you use this guide more effectively.

How This Book Is Organized

The information in this book is divided into two parts, each part divided into chapters.

“Part 1. OS/390 SMB Support Administration Guide” on page 1 discusses guidance information. The chapters in that part begin with a short introduction and are followed by detailed information.

“Part 2. OS/390 SMB Support Reference” on page 83 discusses reference information.

Conventions Used in This Book

This book uses the following typographic conventions:

Bold	Bold words or characters represent system elements that you must enter into the system literally, such as commands.
<i>Italic</i>	<i>Italicized</i> words or characters represent values for variables that you must supply.
Example Font	Examples and information displayed by the system are printed using an example font that is a constant width typeface.

¹ Server Message Block (SMB) is a protocol for remote file/print access used by Microsoft Windows and OS/2 clients. This protocol is also known as Common Internet File System (CIFS).

- [] Optional items found in format and syntax descriptions are enclosed in brackets.
- { } A list from which you choose an item found in format and syntax descriptions are enclosed by braces.
- | A vertical bar separates items in a list of choices.
- < > Angle brackets enclose the name of a key on a keyboard.
- ... Horizontal ellipsis points indicated that you can repeat the preceding item one or more times.
- \ A backslash is used as a continuation character when entering commands from the shell that exceed one line (255 characters). If the command exceeds one line, use the backslash character \ as the last non-blank character on the line to be continued, and continue the command on the next line.

Note: When you enter a command from this book that uses the backslash character (\) make sure you immediately press the Enter key and then continue with the rest of the command. In most cases, the backslash has been positioned for ease of readability.
- # A pound sign is used to indicate a command is entered from the shell, specifically where **root** authority is needed (**root** refers to a user with a **UID = 0**).

This book used the following keying convention:

- <Return> The notation <Return> refers to the key on your terminal or workstation that is labeled with either the word "Return" or "Enter", with a left arrow.

Entering commands

When instructed to enter a command, type the command name and then press <Return>.

Where to Find More Information

Where necessary, this book references information in other books. For complete titles and order numbers for all elements of OS/390, see the *OS/390 Information Roadmap*, GC28-1727.

For information about installing Distributed File Service components, refer to the *OS/390 Program Directory*, GI10-4001.

Information concerning Distributed File Service-related messages can be found in the *OS/390 Distributed File Service Messages and Codes* book.

Softcopy Publications

The OS/390 Distributed File Service library is available on the following CD-ROMs. The CD-ROM online library collections include the IBM Library Reader™, which is a program that enables you to view the softcopy books.

SK2T-6718 *OS/390 PDF Library Collection*

This collection contains the set of unlicensed books for the current release of OS/390 in Portable Document Format (PDF) files. You can view or print these files with the Adobe Acrobat reader.

SK2T-6700 *Online Library Omnibus Edition OS/390 Collection*

This softcopy collection contains a set of unlicensed books for OS/390 and related products. The collection contains the publications for multiple releases of these products.

Internet Sources

- **OS/390 Online Library**

Softcopy OS/390 publications are also available for web-browsing and PDF versions of the OS/390 publications for viewing or printing using Adobe Acrobat Reader at the following URL:

<http://www.ibm.com/s390/os390>

You can also provide comments about this book and any other OS/390 documentation by visiting that URL. Your feedback is important in helping to provide the most accurate and high-quality information.

Summary of Changes

Summary of Changes for SC24-5882-03 OS/390 Version 2 Release 10 as updated March, 2001

This book contains information previously presented in the *OS/390 Distributed File Service SMB Administration Guide and Reference*, SC24-5882-02.

Changed Information

The following files have been enhanced for SMB support of RFS:

- **devtab**

New Information

The OS/390 SMB server now supports Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional as an SMB client.

The OS/390 SMB server now supports HFS automounted file systems by using a new capability called dynamic export.

Permissions used when creating a new file or directory via the SMB server can now be specified on a shared directory basis. They can be specified in the **smbtab**.

Encrypted password support can now be used without requiring OCSF when encryption hardware is not used.

The OS/390 SMB server now supports access to OS/390 data sets (Sequential DASD, PDS, PDSE, and VSAM) from PC clients. This is referred to as RFS (Record File System) support.

The following files have been added for SMB server support of RFS:

- **Attributes File (rfstab)**

The following Appendix has been added:

- “Appendix E. Using OS/390 Data Sets” on page 155.

This book includes terminology, maintenance, and editorial changes. Technical changes or additions to the text and illustrations are indicated by a vertical line to the left of the change.

Summary of Changes for SC24-5882-01 OS/390 Version 2 Release 9

This book contains information previously presented in Release 8 of the *OS/390 Distributed File Service SMB Administration Guide and Reference*, SC24-5882-00.

Changed Information

The OS/390 SMB server now supports encrypted password login.

New Information

The following new command has been added:

- **smbpw**

“Chapter 2. SMB Migration Considerations” on page 7 and “Appendix D. Customizable Files” on page 153 have been added. The new chapter on migration describes some items to consider if you have an earlier release of OS/390 Distributed File Service installed on your system and you plan to install this release of OS/390 Distributed File Service to use the SMB support. The new appendix summarizes the Distributed File Service example files that are supplied by IBM and where they are placed so that you can customize them to meet your local DCE DFS or SMB support requirements.

This book includes terminology, maintenance, and editorial changes. Technical changes or additions to the text and illustrations are indicated by a vertical line to the left of the change.

Part 1. OS/390 SMB Support Administration Guide

This part of the book discusses guidance information for system administrators and Personal Computer (PC) users. Specifically, Chapter 1 is intended for PC users and system administrators, Chapters 2 through 8 are intended for system administrators, and Chapters 9 through 11 are for PC users.

- “Chapter 1. An Overview of OS/390 SMB Support” on page 3
- “Chapter 2. SMB Migration Considerations” on page 7
- “Chapter 3. Post Installation Processing” on page 13
- “Chapter 4. Managing OS/390 SMB Processes” on page 19
- “Chapter 5. Networking Considerations” on page 29
- “Chapter 6. Mapping SMB User IDs to OS/390 User IDs” on page 31
- “Chapter 7. Sharing Files” on page 35
- “Chapter 8. Sharing Printers” on page 55
- “Chapter 9. Locating the OS/390 SMB Server” on page 57
- “Chapter 10. Accessing Data” on page 67
- “Chapter 11. Accessing Printers” on page 75.

Chapter 1. An Overview of OS/390 SMB Support

The OS/390 Distributed File Service Server Message Block (SMB)² support provides a server that makes Hierarchical File System (HFS) files and OS/390 data sets available to SMB clients. The OS/390 data sets supported include sequential data sets (on DASD)³, partitioned data sets (PDS), partitioned data sets extended (PDSE) and Virtual Storage Access Method (VSAM) data sets. The OS/390 data set support is usually referred to as Record File System (RFS) support. The SMB protocol is supported through the use of TCP/IP on OS/390. This communication protocol allows clients to access shared directory paths and shared printers. Personal Computer (PC) clients on the network use the file and print sharing functions that are included in their operating systems. Supported SMB clients include Microsoft Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows NT 4.0 Workstation, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows 3.11 (Windows for Workgroups), and OS/2 Version 4 (for file access only). At the same time, these files can be shared with local OS/390 UNIX System Services applications and with DCE DFS clients.

In addition, Windows SMB clients can make remote print requests to OS/390 printers that are connected to the Infoprint® Server for OS/390 (Version 2 Release 8 or later).

OS/390 SMB Support Features

PC users work with files on their computers. Files are used to store data, programs, and other information. Files are stored on a disk on the computer. There may be several disks on the computer. Each of these disks are referred to by a different drive letter (for example, A:, B:, C:, D:, etc.). PC Users can read or write files on different disks on their computer by using the appropriate drive letter in the file name (for example, D:\dir1\file1).

PC users also work with printers attached to their computers. When a print request is made, the PC user can choose which printer the print request should go to.

OS/390 SMB support allows PC users to be able to access files that reside on an OS/390 system remotely. That is, PC users can access files that are not located on their computer. Remote files simply appear to the PC user on one or more separate drive letters. PC users can “connect” an unused drive letter to a “shared resource” on a remote computer. This is sometimes referred to as “mapping a network drive”. This capability is provided by software that resides on the PC (the client), in combination with software that resides on the remote computer (the server). There must also be a TCP/IP network connection between the PC and the remote computer.

In addition, OS/390 SMB support allows Windows PC users to be able to use remote printers that are attached to an OS/390 system. Remote printers simply appear to be additional printers that are available to the PC user. Remote printers are installed on PCs using existing commands or install utilities.

² Server Message Block (SMB) is a protocol for remote file/print access used by Microsoft Windows and OS/2® clients. This protocol is also known as Common Internet File System (CIFS).

³ Direct Access Storage Device

OS/390 SMB Processes

OS/390 SMB support provides a server process that makes file data and printers available to PC users. It allows an administrator to define shared directories and shared printers. It also handles PC requests to connect to the server process to satisfy file or print requests.

Another SMB process is the control process (also known as the DFS Control Task). It oversees the server process. When OS/390 SMB support is started, it is really the DFS Control Task that is started. The DFS Control Task, in turn, starts the server process. If the server process ends abnormally for some reason, the DFS Control Task can automatically restart the server process.

Shared Directories

In order to allow PCs to access remote files (located on an OS/390 system), one or more shared directories must be created on the OS/390 system. OS/390 Distributed File Service administrators make files available to SMB clients by creating shared directories. A shared directory is given a share name and specifies a directory path name in a file system. Any directory can be shared with clients. To access shared directories from a PC, clients can map a network drive by choosing an available drive letter and mapping it to a computer name and a share name, or they can use Universal Naming Convention (UNC) mapping. (Refer to “Chapter 10. Accessing Data” on page 67, for more information on UNC mapping.) The computer name is the name of the OS/390 Distributed File Service SMB server and the share name is the name of the shared directory created on that server. After this is done, the remote files can be read or written as though they were local files.

Shared Printers

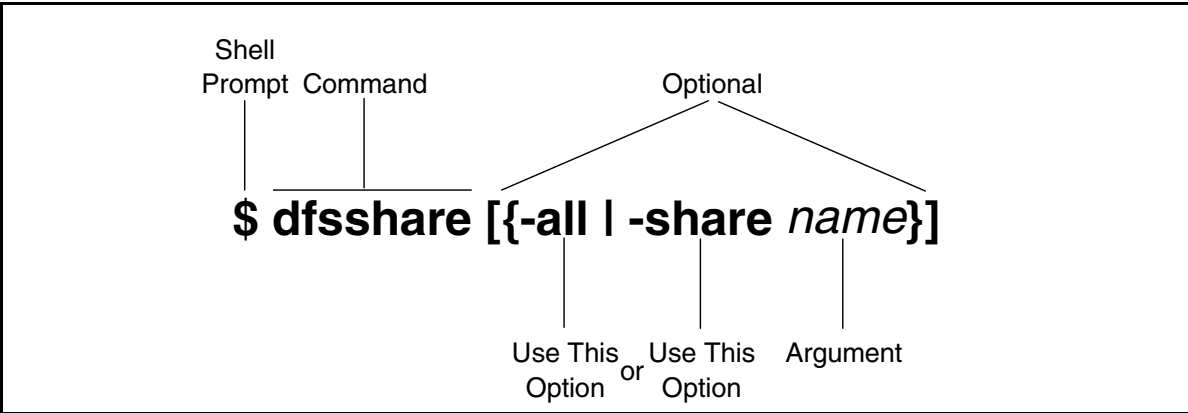
OS/390 Distributed File Service administrators make OS/390 printers available to Windows PCs by creating shared printers. A shared printer is given a share name and specifies an OS/390 Infoprint Server printer definition name. To access a remote printer from a Windows PC, clients can install a remote printer or they can use commands. After this is done, the remote printers can be used as though they were local printers. The SMB server does not allow OS/2® users to connect to OS/390 shared printers.

Command Structure and Help

The SMB commands share a similar structure. The following example shows the basic format of an SMB command:

```
$ command [{-option1 | -option2 argument}]
```

The following example illustrates the elements of an SMB command:



The following list summarizes the elements of an SMB command:

- Command** A command consists of the command name. This name directs the server process or program to perform a specific action. The command name always appears in bold font.

- Options** Command options appear in bold font, are always preceded by a - (dash), and are often followed by arguments. In the previous example, **-all** and **-share** are options, and *name* is the argument. The { | } (braces separated by a vertical bar) indicate that you can enter only one of two possible options.

An option and its arguments tell the server process or program which entities to manipulate when executing the command (for example, the name to assign to the shared directory or printer). In general, you should provide the options for a command in the order presented in the documentation.

- Arguments** Arguments for options always appear in italic font.

- Optional Information** Some commands can have optional, as well as required, options. Optional information is enclosed in [] (brackets). The **-all** and the **-share** with its name argument in the previous example are optional.

Enter each SMB command and its options and arguments on a single line followed by a carriage return at the end of the line. Use a space to separate each element (command name, options, and arguments) on the command line. Also use spaces to separate multiple arguments. Do not use a space to separate an option from its - (dash).

Command Shortcuts

When supplying an argument (such as *name* in the previous example), you can omit the option (such as **-share** in the example) associated with the argument if:

- All arguments supplied with the command are entered in the order in which they appear in the command's syntax. The syntax for each command is presented with its description in "Part 2. OS/390 SMB Support Reference" on page 83.
- Arguments are supplied for all options that precede the option to be omitted.

- All options that precede the option to be omitted accept only a single argument.
- No options, either those that accept an argument or those that do not, are supplied before the option to be omitted.

In the case where two options are presented in { | } (braces separated by a vertical line), the option associated with the first argument can be omitted if that argument is provided; however, the option associated with the second argument is required if that argument is provided.

If you must provide an option, you can abbreviate it to the shortest possible form that distinguishes it from other options of the command. For example, the **-share** option can typically be omitted or abbreviated to be simply **-s**.

The following example illustrates three acceptable ways to enter the same **dfsshare** command:

- Complete command:
\$ **dfsshare -share** *name*
- Abbreviated command name and abbreviated option:
\$ **dfsshare -s** *name*
- Abbreviated command name and omitted option:
\$ **dfsshare** *name*

Receiving Help

You can receive help on the SMB commands by using the **-help** option:

\$ **command -help**

Chapter 2. SMB Migration Considerations

If you have an earlier release of OS/390 Distributed File Service installed on your system and you plan to install this release of OS/390 Distributed File Service to use the SMB support, there are some important items to consider. This chapter contains OS/390 Distributed File Service release migration considerations for SMB in the following sections:

- “New for each Release of SMB”
- “Migration to New SMB Release” on page 8
- “SMB Configuration File Considerations” on page 11.

New for each Release of SMB

This section summarizes the new and changed information for each release of SMB.

Version 2 Release 8

The following information describes the new and changed information for Version 2 Release 8 of SMB.

- The OS/390 Distributed File Service now supports the SMB File/Print Server as well as the DCE DFS client and server support for a distributed computing environment. SMB support is explained in this book. Refer to the *OS/390 Distributed File Service DFS Administration Guide and Reference* for further information on the DCE DFS client and server support.
- A new environment variable, `_IOE_PROTOCOL_RPC`, has been added to allow the Distributed File Service server to start with the DCE RPC support disabled. `_IOE_PROTOCOL_RPC=ON` is the default. `_IOE_PROTOCOL_RPC=OFF` allows the server to be used only for the SMB File/Print Server. Another new environment variable, `_IOE_PROTOCOL_SMB=ON`, enables the SMB File/Print capability. The default is `_IOE_PROTOCOL_SMB=OFF`.
- Additional new environment variables allow you to override the default SMB server processing options.
- The `/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/smbtab` file is added to define shared directories and shared printers for PC clients.
- SMB print support requires that the OS/390 Infoprint Server be installed and customized. Additionally, the `LIBPATH` environment variable must be specified in the `dfskern` process. For example, it could specify `LIBPATH=/usr/lpp/Printsrv/lib`.
- The `smbidmap` file (pointed to by the `dfskern _IOE_SMB_IDMAP` environment variable) is added to define the mapping between PC user IDs and OS/390 user IDs.

Version 2 Release 9

The following information describes the new and changed information for Version 2 Release 9 of SMB.

- The OS/390 SMB server now supports encrypted password login. A new `dfskern` environment variable, `_IOE_SMB_CLEAR_PW`, has been added to control this function. When this function is used, the SMB server invokes OCSF services. This requires that a `dfskern` environment variable called `LIBPATH` must include the path `/usr/lib`. A new OMVS command, `smbpw`, has been added to allow PC users to store their SMB password in RACF®, a component of the SecureWay® Security

Server for OS/390, for the encrypted password login function. **smbpw** is an authorized program (extattr +a).

- When a shared HFS file system is exported by the SMB server, the SMB server must run on the system that owns the HFS file system.

Version 2 Release 10

The following information describes the new and changed information for Version 2 Release 10 of SMB.

- The OS/390 SMB server now supports PC client access to OS/390 data sets. This is referred to as the Record File System (RFS). OS/390 data sets are presented to PC clients as hierarchical byte stream data (with restrictions). The **devtab** file is enhanced to allow the administrator to specify RFS data to be exported. After it is exported, an RFS “file system” directory can be shared with PC clients. A new file, **rfstab**, is defined to allow specification of OS/390 data set characteristics when RFS files are created. Several new environment variables are defined to control RFS characteristics.
- The OS/390 SMB server now supports Windows 2000 Professional as an SMB client.
- The OS/390 SMB server now supports HFS automounted file systems using a new capability called dynamic export.
- The OS/390 SMB server now supports the specification of permissions to be used when creating a new file or directory on a shared directory basis.
- The OS/390 SMB server now supports the use of encrypted passwords without requiring OCSF when encryption hardware is not used.

Migration to New SMB Release

When migrating to a new release of OS/390 Distributed File Service, it is not necessary to copy and save your customized files prior to installing. The customizable files are listed in “Appendix D. Customizable Files” on page 153.

Some of the customizable files listed may not be present on your system when installing a new release of Distributed File Service (unless you are reinstalling this version) because the files are new for this release. Most customizable files that do not exist are created as part of Distributed File Service post installation by the **dfs_cpfiles** program from sample files provided in the **/opt/dfsglobal/examples** directory. There are several files that you need to create (if this is your first installation of Distributed File Service) in order to specify the HFS data and shared printers to be made available to PC clients. These include the **smbtab**, **dfstab**, and the **devtab** files. Also, the **smbidmap** file must be created to map PC user IDs to OS/390 user IDs.

To install a new release of Distributed File Service:

1. DCE DFS Considerations

If you previously used DCE DFS, refer to the *OS/390 Distributed File Service DFS Configuring and Getting Started* book, “DFS Migration Considerations” chapter. It is recommended that you migrate the DFS in a DCE environment before completing any additional steps to migrate the SMB support to the new release.

If you have already migrated DFS to the new release and you want to activate SMB support for the first time, you should follow the “SMB File/Print Server Installation and Configuration Steps” on page 13.

2. Symbolic Link Considerations

Prior to OS/390 Version 2 Release 6, all Distributed File Service customizable files resided in a separate HFS data set mounted at **/usr/lpp/dfs/local**. Starting in OS/390 Version 2 Release 6, the Distributed File Service customizable files reside in the path **/etc/dfs**. During installation, symbolic links are deleted and recreated to link to files in **/etc/dfs**.

If you have replaced any Distributed File Service symbolic links, they are deleted during installation. You should save the file data before installing the Distributed File Service. These files are listed in the *OS/390 Distributed File Service DFS Configuring and Getting Started* book, “OS/390 DFS Directories and Files” appendix.

3. Installing the OS/390 Distributed File Service

If you have not already done so, install this release of OS/390 Distributed File Service by referring to the instructions in the *OS/390 Program Directory*.

Note: The following instructions assume that you have copied the preexisting **/etc** file system for use on the target image of the OS/390 release installation as recommended in the *OS/390 Program Directory*.

4. Stopping the Distributed File Service server

If the Distributed File Service server is running on the target image, stop the server at this time using the operator command **stop dfs**. Refer to “Chapter 4. Managing OS/390 SMB Processes” on page 19 for more information.

5. RACF Database Considerations

If you are installing into a target image that uses the same RACF database as the production image, the preexisting SMB configuration files that were included when the production **/etc** file system was copied by using the instructions in the *OS/390 Program Directory* do not need to be modified to change the RACF OS/390 user IDs. You need to only review and update the target image copy of the configuration files with optional parameters new for this release later in the migration process.

If the target image uses a different RACF database, the **smbidmap** file defined by the **_IOE_SMB_IDMAP** environment variable in the **/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envar** file must be updated to define the correct user identifiers. Refer to “Chapter 6. Mapping SMB User IDs to OS/390 User IDs” on page 31 for more details. You may also need to review the **_IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT** environment variable in the **/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envar** file. See “Logon Considerations” on page 51 for more details.

6. Exported Data Considerations

If you are installing into a target image that can access the same exported file data as the production image, the preexisting **smbtab**, **dfstab**, and **devtab** files in the **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs** directory can be used.

If the target image cannot access the same exported file data as the production image, or if you do not want to export the production data files during the testing of the new OS/390 release on the target image, you must update these files to export and share only test data.

7. Printer Considerations

If you are installing into a target image that can access the same printers as the production image, the preexisting **smbtab** file in the **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs** directory can be used.

If the target image cannot access the same printers as the production image, or if you do not want to share the production printers during the testing of the new OS/390 release on the target image, you must update this file to create different shared printers.

8. Running the `/opt/dfsglobal/scripts/dfs_cpfiles` program

Some of the customizable files listed in “Appendix D. Customizable Files” on page 153, may not exist in the `/etc/dfs` file system on the target image when installing a new release of OS/390 Distributed File Service (unless you are reinstalling this release). Customizable files that do not exist are created as part of post installation processing by the `dfs_cpfiles` program from the sample files in the `/opt/dfsglobal/examples` directory.

If you have not already run the `dfs_cpfiles` program per the instructions in the *OS/390 Program Directory*, you should run it now against the target image `/etc/dfs` to ensure that all new configuration files for the new release are created.

More information on the `dfs_cpfiles` program can be found in “Chapter 3. Post Installation Processing” on page 13.

Note: The `dfs_cpfiles` program does not create all the files necessary for SMB support. Refer to the section “SMB Configuration File Considerations” on page 11 for more information.

9. Updating Preexisting Configuration Files and Server Startup Parameters

Compare your target system customizable files with the example `ioepdcf` and `envar` files in the `/opt/dfsglobal/examples` directory for this release to determine if any new parameters or variables for this release are applicable to your system.

For information on what is new in this release of Distributed File Service for SMB processing, refer to “New for each Release of SMB” on page 7.

10. Authorized Program Considerations

With Version 2 Release 9, the list of authorized programs for the Distributed File Service is now:

- IOEGRWAG
- IOENEWAG
- IOESALVG
- SMBPW.

Refer to the *OS/390 Program Directory* for a description of the PARMLIB member updates required for the member IKJTSOxx.

11. SMB File/Print Considerations

For the optional SMB support, the `_IOE_PROTOCOL_SMB` environment variable in the `/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envar` file for the `dfskern` process must be updated to specify `_IOE_PROTOCOL_SMB=ON`.

Insure that the `LIBPATH` environment variable in the `/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envar` file is updated. If SMB print serving support is used, specify the `LIBPATH` environment variable to identify the OS/390 Infoprint Server library. If the SMB support for encrypted passwords is used, update the `LIBPATH` to include the path `/usr/lib` so the OCSF library can be found. For example, the `envar` can specify `LIBPATH=/usr/lpp/Printsrv/lib:/usr/lib`.

The `smbtab`, `dfstab`, and `devtab` files must be created if they do not exist and updated to specify the HFS data to be made available to PC clients. The `smbtab` file must be created and updated to specify the shared printers to be made available to PC clients. These files reside in the `/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs` directory. See “Chapter 7. Sharing Files” on page 35 and “Chapter 8. Sharing Printers” on page 55 for more information on these topics.

SMB Configuration File Considerations

Certain SMB configuration files contain system specific information. These HFS files, if copied to another system, must be modified to contain or point to data on that system. In particular, the **smbtab**, **dfstab**, and **devtab** files point to the data that is to be made available to PC clients. The **smbtab** may also refer to shared printers that are to be made available to PC clients. The **smbidmap** file and the **_IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT dfskern** environment variable both contain OS/390 user IDs that may need to be changed. Other **dfskern** environment variables that may need to be changed include:

- **_IOE_SMB_COMPUTER_NAME**
- **_IOE_SMB_DOMAIN_NAME**
- **_IOE_SMB_IDMAP**
- **_IOE_SMB_PRIMARY_WINS**
- **_IOE_SMB_SECONDARY_WINS**
- **_IOE_SMB_WINS_PROXY**

The **dfs_cpfiles** program is run during Distributed File Service installation. The **dfs_cpfiles** program creates (**not replaces**) certain customizable files with default information if the file does not exist. The files that are copied are listed in “Chapter 3. Post Installation Processing” on page 13.

Chapter 3. Post Installation Processing

The SMB File/Print Server function is part of the Distributed File Service base element of OS/390. Before using the SMB support, you must install the OS/390 release, the Distributed File Service and the other base elements of OS/390 using the appropriate release documentation, the *OS/390 Program Directory* or the *ServerPac: Installing Your Order*. During the installation of the OS/390 release, you must perform actions to activate the SMB support.

Note: If you are only using the SMB File/Print support in the Distributed File Service (and not the DCE DFS support), DCE does not need to be configured and started. DCE only needs to be installed.

To use the SMB File/Print support, you may also need to install and configure the Open Cryptographic Service Facility (OCSF) or the Infoprint Server Feature of OS/390.

- If you plan to use encrypted passwords and you want to exploit hardware encryption, you need to install and configure the OS/390 Open Cryptographic Services Facility (OCSF) base component of the Cryptographic Services element. If you plan to use password encryption and you do not want to use hardware encryption, you do not need to install and configure OCSF and you should set the `dfs kern` environment variable `_IOE_SMB_OCSF=OFF`.
- If you plan to use the SMB print serving support, you need to install and configure the OS/390 Infoprint Server feature.

If you are migrating from a prior release of OS/390 Distributed File Service and you want to use the SMB function, please review “Chapter 2. SMB Migration Considerations” on page 7.

To use the SMB support, you must configure the support on the system. Configuration includes administrative actions such as:

- Activating the SMB file/print serving function
- Defining SMB administrators
- Specifying optional DFS process options
- Defining SMB users
- Defining HFS and RFS data sets to export and share for access by SMB clients
- Defining printers to share for access by SMB clients
- Updating SMB client PC machines running Windows, Windows NT, or other operating systems that issue requests to file/print servers using the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.

This chapter contains the information to assist and guide you in completing the installation and configuration of the OS/390 Distributed File Service SMB File/Print Server support.

SMB File/Print Server Installation and Configuration Steps

To install, configure, and access the OS/390 Distributed File Service server (`dfs kern`) for SMB File/Print Server operation, you must perform the following administrative steps:

1. Install and perform post-installation of the OS/390 Distributed File Service by following the applicable instructions in the *OS/390 Program Directory* or the *ServerPac: Installing Your Order*.

Ensure that the proper authorizations have been given to the DFS server user ID to use OCSF services. See the “Cryptographic Services OCSF Customization Considerations” section in the *OS/390 Program Directory* and the “Configuring and Getting Started” section in the *OS/390 Open Cryptographic Services Facility Application Developer’s Guide and Reference*, SC24-5875 for information on this topic.

2. Stop the Distributed File Service server (**dfskern**), if it is already running, by following the applicable instructions in “Chapter 4. Managing OS/390 SMB Processes” on page 19.
3. Define administrators on the host system following the applicable instructions in “Defining SMB Administrators” on page 16.
4. Create the default DFS configuration files using the **/opt/dfsglobal/scripts/dfs_cpfiles** shell script, if they were not created during the installation process.

These configuration files, required by SMB File/Print Server, are usually created before the Distributed File Service installation is verified by the **/opt/dfsglobal/scripts/dfs_cpfiles** shell script, as indicated in the *OS/390 Program Directory*. **dfs_cpfiles** is described in further detail, see “Using dfs_cpfiles to Create Default DFS Configuration Files” on page 16.

5. Modify the **/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envar** file to activate SMB File/Print Server by setting the environment variable (envar) **_IOE_PROTOCOL_SMB=ON**. Assuming that you do not want to also use DCE DFS file serving, you should also set the environment variable **_IOE_PROTOCOL_RPC=OFF** in the file **/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envar**.

If you are using OCSF, ensure that the **/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envar** file has a LIBPATH that adds the directory that contains the OCSF DLLs. Be sure that the directory added is the directory indicated in the *OS/390 Open Cryptographic Services Facility Application Developer’s Guide and Reference*, SC24-5875.

If you are using the print capability of the SMB File/Print Server, ensure that the OS/390 Infoprint Server is installed and customized by following the applicable instructions in the *OS/390 Program Directory*. In addition, ensure that the **/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envar** file has a LIBPATH entry that adds the directory that contains the OS/390 Infoprint Server DLLs. Be sure that the directory added is the directory indicated in the “Infoprint Server Customization Considerations” section of the *OS/390 Program Directory*.

For example, a LIBPATH that specifies both the OCSF DLL directory and the Infoprint Server DLL directory might look like **LIBPATH=/usr/lib:/usr/lpp/Printsrv/lib**.

6. Since the SMB File/Print Server runs as an APF-authorized server, you must ensure that any DLLs that are used by the SMB File/Print Server are APF-authorized. This can be accomplished by using the OMVS **extattr +a** command. If you are using the Infoprint Server or OCSF, see the “Infoprint Server Customization Considerations” section in the *OS/390 Program Directory* and the “Cryptographic Services OCSF Customization Considerations” section in the *OS/390 Open Cryptographic Services Facility Application Developer’s Guide and Reference*, SC24-5875, for information on the location of the DLLs and setting the APF-authorized extended attribute. The DFS load library is called hlq.SIOELMOD.
7. PC clients must be able to find the server on the network in order to use the shares that the OS/390 SMB server makes available. If you are using Windows 2000 clients, you should ensure that your computer name (specified in the **_IOE_SMB_COMPUTER_NAME** environment variable in the **/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envar** file) is the same as your TCP/IP hostname. Refer to “Chapter 5. Networking Considerations” on page 29.

8. Define SMB users by modifying the **smbidmap** file identified by the **_IOE_SMB_IDMAP** environment variable of **dfskern**. Map SMB users to OS/390 users on the host system by following the applicable instructions in “Chapter 6. Mapping SMB User IDs to OS/390 User IDs” on page 31.

In addition, OS/390 users that do not use DCE, should put the following line in their HFS **.profile** file in their home directory:

```
export _EUV_AUTOLOG=NO
```

Alternatively, if no OS/390 users are using DCE, the above line may be placed in **/etc/profile**. It is then set for all OS/390 UNIX System Services users.

9. Determine whether you intend to use password encryption. See the **_IOE_SMB_CLEAR_PW** environment variable in “Appendix A. Environment Variables in SMB” on page 131 and “Logon Considerations” on page 51 for information on password encryption. Before you enable password encryption, your PC users must store their SMB password into their RACF DCE segment. Otherwise, they are not able to logon except, possibly, as a guest user.
10. Determine whether you intend to allow guest users. Guest users are PC users that have (limited) access to files and printers on the SMB server without identifying themselves. Guest users are allowed when the **_IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT** environment variable in the **dfskern** process is set to a valid OS/390 user ID. Guest users can access any data or files that that OS/390 user ID can access. If guest users are allowed, users that specify an incorrect password or no password become the guest user ID. It is better to disallow guest users until you are certain you need this capability and that it meets your security guidelines.
11. Determine whether you intend to use the dynamic export capability. It is controlled by the **_IOE_DYNAMIC_EXPORT** environment variable of **dfskern**. The default is **OFF** meaning that dynamic export is not enabled. Dynamic export allows the SMB server to support file systems mounted via the OS/390 Automount Facility. See *OS/390 UNIX System Services Planning*, SC28-1890, for information on the automount facility. Dynamic export also allows the SMB server to dynamically “discover” mounted file systems without the need to provide **dfstab** and **devtab** entries for the file systems. See “Dynamic Export for HFS” on page 40 for information on using the dynamic export capability of the SMB server.
12. Define shared directories if the SMB File/Print Server is run on the host system to export file data sets for access by PC clients by updating the **smbtab**, **dfstab**, and **devtab** files and optionally, for RFS, by specifying an **rfstab** file in the **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs** directory. Define file systems and filesets following the applicable instructions in “Chapter 7. Sharing Files” on page 35. For RFS, the DFS server user ID (usually DFS) must have RACF ALTER authority to the OS/390 data sets that are made available to PC users. Alternatively, you may give the DFS server user ID the OPERATIONS attribute.
13. Define shared printers if the SMB File/Print Server is run on the host system to export Infoprint Server printers for access by PC clients. Define the print shares by updating the file **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/smbtab**. Refer to “Chapter 8. Sharing Printers” on page 55 for more information.
14. Start the Distributed File Service server (**dfskern**) by following the applicable instructions in “Chapter 4. Managing OS/390 SMB Processes” on page 19.
15. Configure PC client workstations to access the OS/390 SMB File/Print Server by following the instructions in “Chapter 9. Locating the OS/390 SMB Server” on page 57.

Defining SMB Administrators

There are two types of users who can start or stop the Distributed File Service server address space and the processes controlled by DFSCNTL, (see “Chapter 4. Managing OS/390 SMB Processes” on page 19):

- A user with OS/390 operator privileges.
- A user who has update privilege to the **DFSKERN.START.REQUEST** profile in the RACF FACILITY class. This profile is created during the installation of DFS. For more information on this, refer to the *OS/390 Program Directory*.

In addition, the SMB Administrator must have **root** authority on the OS/390 machine. This means an OS/390 user ID with a **UID=0**. This is required in order to issue certain commands and to define shared directories and shared printers.

If the SMB Administrator does not use DCE facilities, the following environment variable should be specified in the SMB Administrator’s OMVS environment (for example, in the SMB Administrator’s \$HOME/.profile file):

```
export _EUV_AUTOLOG=NO
```

Using dfs_cpfiles to Create Default DFS Configuration Files

The **/opt/dfsglobal/scripts/dfs_cpfiles** program is an OS/390 shell script that creates customizable configuration files in **/opt/dfslocal** subdirectories. **dfs_cpfiles** copies IBM-supplied files from the **/opt/dfsglobal/examples** directory to **/opt/dfslocal** subdirectories. The **dfs_cpfiles** program creates files that do not exist. It does not replace an existing file to preserve any installation configuration data from a previous release.

/opt/dfslocal is a symbolic link to **/etc/dfs**. So, all the files created by the **dfs_cpfiles** program are actually created in the **/etc** file system. Refer to the *OS/390 Distributed File Service DFS Configuring and Getting Started* book (Appendix B), for more information on the symbolic links defined to identify the configuration files.

Although some configuration files can be created in other directories and identified by **envar** specifications, it is recommended that all the configuration files reside in the **/opt/dfslocal** subdirectories in the **/etc** file system.

To invoke **dfs_cpfiles**:

1. Log in as **root** on the local machine. On OS/390, this means a user with a **UID=0**.
2. While in the OS/390 shell environment, invoke the **dfs_cpfiles** program by entering the following:

```
/opt/dfsglobal/scripts/dfs_cpfiles
```

Note: An existing DFS configuration file is not replaced to ensure any existing user customized data is not overlaid.

3. **dfs_cpfiles** creates customizable files for all aspects of the Distributed File Service. A subset of these files are applicable to the SMB File/Print Server. The customizable files applicable to the SMB File/Print Server are:

```

/opt/dfslocal/etc/ioepdcf
/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/devtab
/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/dfstab
/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/rfstab
/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/smbtab
/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/hfsattr
/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/smbidmap
/opt/dfslocal/home/daemonct/envar
/opt/dfslocal/home/dfscntl/envar
/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envar
/opt/dfslocal/home/dfsexport/envar

```

The **smbtab**, **dfstab**, and **devtab** files in the **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs** directory are created by **dfs_cpfiles**. They must be updated to define shared directories. Refer to “Chapter 7. Sharing Files” on page 35 for more information. The **smbtab** file must be updated to define shared printers. Refer to “Chapter 8. Sharing Printers” on page 55 for more information. The **smbidmap** file must be updated to map PC user IDs to OS/390 user IDs. Refer to “Chapter 6. Mapping SMB User IDs to OS/390 User IDs” on page 31 for more information. Optionally, the **hfsattr** and **rfstab** files can be updated to define HFS data translation by filename extension attributes and RFS attributes for RFS files, respectively. See “Chapter 7. Sharing Files” on page 35 for more information.

The other customizable files are used for DFS client and server support in a distributed computing environment. It is recommended that the files exist as created by the **dfs_cpfiles** program, otherwise it can be ignored if only the SMB File/Print Server is used.

4. The following example output shows the possible output after using **dfs_cpfiles** to create the customizable configuration files for the OS/390 Distributed File Service:

```

*****
**                               OS/390 DFS                               **
**                               Default Configuration Files Creation Program **
*****
Attempt to Create envar Files....
File /opt/dfslocal/home/bakserver/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/boserver/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/butc01/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/butc02/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/butc03/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/butc04/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/butc05/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/butc06/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/butc06/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/butc07/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/butc08/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/daemonct/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/dfscm/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/dfscntl/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/dfsexport/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/flserver/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/ftserver/envar created

```

```
File /opt/dfslocal/home/growaggr/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/newaggr/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/repserver/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/salvage/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/upclient/envar created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/upserver/envar created
```

Attempt to Create Miscellaneous Configuration Files....

```
File /opt/dfslocal/etc/ioepdcf created
File /opt/dcelocal/etc/CacheInfo created
File /opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/devtab created
File /opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/dfstab created
File /opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/rfstab created
File /opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/smbtab created
File /opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/cmattr created
File /opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/hfsattr created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/dfsimap created
File /opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/smbidmap created
```

Notes:

1. The previous example shows the **dfs_cpfiles** messages when files are created.

If a file already exists, an example of this message is:

```
File /opt/dfslocal/etc/ioepdcf already exists.
```

If an error occurs creating the file, an example of this message is:

```
File /opt/dfslocal/etc/ioepdcf not created
```

2. If you are migrating to this release of the OS/390 Distributed File Service from an earlier release and **dfs_cpfiles** created a new set of customizable files, you may need to add your customization data to the newly created files.
3. If you are migrating to this release of OS/390 from an earlier release and new customizable configuration files were not created by **dfs_cpfiles**, you may want to update preexisting customizable files with new customization options available with this release of Distributed File Service. Refer to "Chapter 2. SMB Migration Considerations" on page 7 for more information on what is new in this release.
4. The SMB user identity mapping file is identified by the envar **_IOE_SMB_IDMAP**. It is recommended that the **/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/smbidmap** file created by the **dfs_cpfiles** program is used by the installation for user identity mapping.

After all the configuration files required by SMB file/print processing have been created and updated, you can proceed to the next step of configuration.

Chapter 4. Managing OS/390 SMB Processes

This chapter briefly describes the SMB server address space and then discusses starting the server, stopping the server, and other activities required to manage the server.

The SMB daemons run as separate processes within the DFS address space shown in Figure 1.

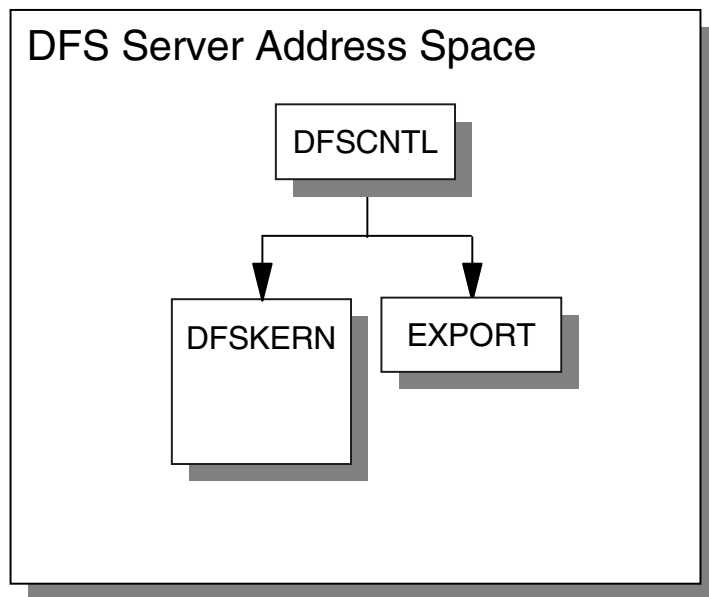


Figure 1. DFS Server Address Space

Figure 1 shows **dfscntl** (the DFS Control Task) acting as the **parent process** to all the DFS server daemons. The DFS server daemons (**dfskern** and **export**) run as child processes of **dfscntl**. The **export** daemon communicates with **dfskern** to make the specified file systems available on the network and then stops. The **dfskern** daemon remains active to handle incoming file and print requests. **dfskern** can be run in the DFS Server Address Space or in its own address space. This is controlled by the, **_IOE_DAEMONS_IN_AS**, environment variable which is set in the **/opt/dfslocal/home/dfscntl/envar** file. If this environment variable is not specified, **dfskern** runs in the DFS Server Address Space. If it is specified as **_IOE_DAEMONS_IN_AS=DFSKERN**, **dfskern** runs in its own address space (called the **dfskern** Address Space) as shown in Figure 2. Running **dfskern** in its own address space may reduce contention for resources and provide better failure recovery. IBM recommends that **dfskern** be run in its own address space. **MODIFY** commands are unchanged whether **dfskern** runs in its own address space or not. Ensure that the **dfskern** JCL is available and the **daemonct** envar file is in the **daemonct** home directory (**/opt/dfslocal/home/daemonct**) if you want to run **dfskern** in its own address space. Then, if you want to change where **dfskern** runs, add or remove the **dfscntl** environment variable (in the **/opt/dfslocal/home/dfscntl/envar** file), **_IOE_DAEMONS_IN_AS=DFSKERN**, stop DFS if it is running, and then restart DFS.

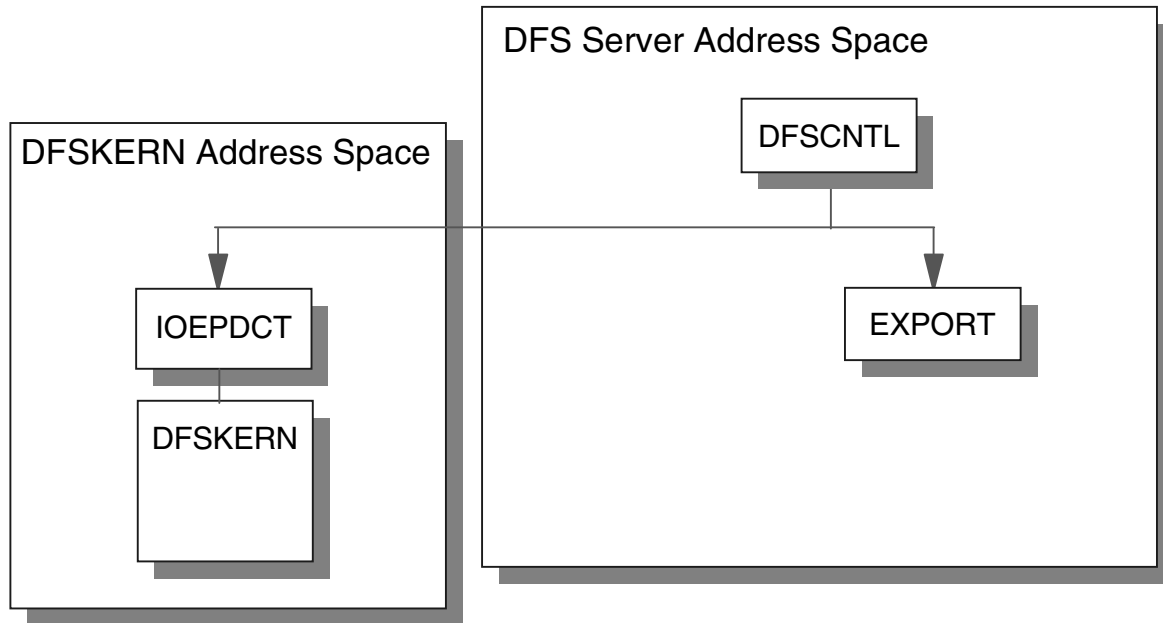


Figure 2. DFSKERN in a Separate Address Space

After the DFS server address space is configured, both daemons (**dfskern** and **export**) are started automatically when the DFS server address space is started.

All requests to DFS are directed to **dfscntl**, that performs the requested action. The DFS server daemons can be started and stopped using an operator command. In starting and stopping the daemons, **dfscntl** uses a **Daemon Configuration File** (that is, the **ioepdcf** file) that contains information on the daemons that were previously configured on the host. The Daemon Configuration File contains runtime options, startup parameters, and restart information for its subprocesses. For details on the Daemon Configuration File, see “Daemon Configuration File” on page 25.

Besides starting and stopping the DFS server daemons, **dfscntl** can also detect a daemon that has prematurely stopped and tries to restart it automatically. The algorithm used by **dfscntl** in starting and restarting the DFS server daemons is summarized in “How dfscntl Starts the DFS Server Daemons” on page 26.

The following are the PDS member names for the DFS processes started by **dfscntl**:

dfskern

The **dfskern** daemon load module name. The name, **dfskern**, is an alias for the load library entry, **IOEDFSKN**.

export

The **export** process is started by **dfscntl** and executes the load library entry, **IOEDFSXP**. The **export** process has no alias.

Who can Start and Stop DFS Server Daemons?

There are two types of users who can start and stop the DFS server daemons in DFS:

- A user with OS/390 operator privileges.
- A user who has update privilege to the **DFSKERN.START.REQUEST** profile in the RACF FACILITY class. This profile is created during the installation of DFS. For information on this, refer to the *OS/390 Program Directory*.

Starting DFS Server Daemons

DFS server daemons are started in any of the following ways:

- During the system IPL
- Using the **MODIFY DFS** operator command
- Using the **START** operator command.

Based upon the control files for **dfscntl** set up by the DFS administrator, all of the DFS server daemons can be automatically started when the DFS started task is started.

The OS/390 DFS daemons can all run in one address space (except for possibly **dfskern**) which is a started task (default name DFS). A user with OS/390 operator privileges can start and stop the DFS started task. The DFS server address space may be started automatically during system IPL. To start the DFS server address space, use the OS/390 **START** command. For example,

```
start dfs
```

Ideally, the daemons run continuously in the background and do not need to be started or stopped again. However, the DFS server daemons may have to be started manually in certain situations, for example, if a daemon ends abnormally. You can use the **MODIFY** operator command to manually start or stop the DFS server daemons.

Each of these alternatives is discussed in the following sections.

The MODIFY DFS Operator Command

The DFS server daemons (processes) can be started or stopped using the **MODIFY DFS** operator command. Using **MODIFY DFS**, you can also view the status of the DFS server daemons. Following is the syntax of the **MODIFY DFS** command:

```
MODIFY DFS,command daemon[,options]
```

where:

DFS is the name of the DFS server address space.

command

Is the action that is to be performed on the SMB server daemon or daemons. It can have any of the following values:

start

Starts the DFS server daemon or daemons.

stop

Stops the DFS server daemon or daemons.

query

Displays the state of the DFS server daemon or daemons.

send

Sends requests to the DFS server daemon or daemons.

daemon

Is the name of the DFS server daemon for which the action is being requested. It can have any of the following values:

dfskern

DFS kernel program (includes the SMB File/Print Server).

export

Export program to make file systems available for exporting and shares available to PC users.

unexport

Unexport program to unexport file systems and delete shares.

all

All the DFS server daemons (that is, **dfskern** and **export**).

options

Values that are passed to the daemons.

Using MODIFY DFS to Start DFS Server Daemons: With the **MODIFY DFS** operator command, you have the option of starting an individual daemon or starting all the daemons using a single command.

For example, to start the **dfskern** daemon, enter the following:

```
modify dfs,start dfskern
```

To start all the daemons, enter the following:

```
modify dfs,start all
```

Note: Do not use the **MODIFY** command to start the DFS server daemons while the DFS server address space is still initializing. During initialization, DFS attempts to start all the DFS server daemons that have been configured on the OS/390 host. If you issue the **MODIFY** command while DFS is initializing, the DFS server daemons may be started out of order or stopped erroneously. This may lead to unexpected errors during initialization and cause DFS to end abnormally.

It is recommended that you wait until DFS has issued a log message indicating that DFS server initialization has completed before using the **MODIFY** commands.

Order of Starting DFS Server Daemons

When DFS server daemons are started manually, the successful startup of some daemons depend on the availability of the services provided by other daemons. This implies that the DFS server daemons must be started in a particular order.

Following is the sequence by which DFS server daemons should be started.

Note: This is only applicable if you need to start any of the DFS server daemons individually. If the DFS server daemons are started collectively, (for example, using the **start all** option of the **MODIFY DFS** command) DFS ensures that the correct starting sequence is followed.

1. **dfskern**
2. **export**

For example, to successfully start the **export** daemon, the **dfskern** daemon must already be up and running.

If you are using the DFS server's SMB capability to do printing, the OS/390 Infoprint Server should be started before the **dfskern** server daemon. Otherwise, you need to issue the **dfsshare** command to share the printers defined in **smbtab**.

Stopping DFS

To stop the DFS server address space, use the **STOP** operator command to ensure the normal shutdown of the address space.

To stop the DFS server address space and all DFS server daemons, enter the following OS/390 operator command:

```
stop dfs
```

To stop the DFS server daemons, but not the DFS server address space, use the **STOP ALL** command. For example:

```
modify dfs,stop all
```

The **STOP ALL** command causes **dfscntl** to stop all daemons that it controls.

Using MODIFY DFS to Stop DFS Server Daemons

You can use the **MODIFY DFS** system command to stop a DFS server daemon or all daemons that are configured on the host.

For example, to stop the **dfskern** daemon, enter:

```
modify dfs,stop dfskern
```

To stop all DFS server daemons on the host, enter:

```
modify dfs,stop all
```

Viewing the Status of DFS Server Daemons

You can query the status of the DFS server daemons using the **query** option of the **MODIFY** system command. You do not need the special privileges of a DFS administrator or an operator to use the **QUERY** option.

For example, to query the status of the **dfskern** daemon, enter the following:

```
modify dfs,query dfskern
```

A message about the status of the daemon is written on the system log. This message also contains the **process ID** of the daemon.

The status of the daemon can be any of the following:

READY

Indicates that the daemon is running, has been initialized, and is ready to receive and process incoming requests.

ACTIVE

Indicates that a manual process is running. When an active process stops, it is never considered an error and it is never restarted automatically.

INITIALIZING

Indicates that the daemon has been started, but is not yet ready to receive and process incoming requests.

STOPPING

Indicates that a request to stop the daemon has been received and that the daemon is in the process of stopping.

DOWN

Indicates that the daemon is not active.

UNKNOWN

Indicates that the status of the daemon cannot be determined. This can occur if the daemon was started, but no response was received by the system indicating a change in its status.

Note: You can issue a command to stop a daemon if it is in the UNKNOWN state.

The status of OS/390 DFS daemons controlled by **dfscntl** can be queried by OS/390 operator commands. For example:

```
modify dfs,query all  
modify dfs,query dfskern
```

Following is an example of a query command to **dfscntl**. The output is sent to the OS/390 Operator's console:

```
modify dfs,query dfskern
```


IOEP00022I DFS daemon DFSKERN status is READY and process id is 781.

Starting DFS Server Daemons During IPL

Because the DFS server daemons are contained in the DFS server address space (except for possibly **dfskern**), these daemons are started during the initialization of DFS. This allows you to configure the host to automatically start the DFS server address space during the system IPL.

dfscntl uses the Daemon Configuration File to determine which daemons can be started, and the parameters to pass to the daemon load module when starting the daemon. The DFS server address space may be started automatically during system IPL. To start the DFS server address space, use the OS/390 **START** command. For example,

```
start dfs
```

Daemon Configuration File

The Daemon Configuration File is used by **dfscntl** to obtain necessary information when starting the DFS server daemons. The Daemon Configuration File contains the following information:

- The name of the process to be started.
- A parameter that specifies actions to be taken when the process is started. It can have the following values:
 - Y**
Start the process during initialization. If the process ends abnormally, then restart it automatically.
 - N**
Do not start the process automatically or manually.
 - I**
Start the process during initialization. The process can be started manually. If the process ends, it does not restart.
 - M**
Can be started manually.
- Parameters that are passed to the load module when a daemon is started, called the argument list (including LE/370 runtime options).
- The **Minimum Restart Interval**. **dfscntl** attempts to restart a daemon that ends abnormally only if the daemon was running for at least this time interval. If a daemon ends during this time interval, it is not be restarted.
- The **Time-out Period**, which is the maximum time interval that **dfscntl** waits for the daemon to complete its initialization after it has been started. When this time interval elapses, and **dfscntl** has not

received confirmation from the daemon that initialization has completed, the status of the daemon is set to **UNKNOWN**.

The path name to the Daemon Configuration file is **/opt/dfslocal/etc/ioepdcf**. Figure 3 shows the typical contents of the Daemon Configuration file.

```
DFSKERN CONFIGURED=Y LMD=DFSKERN ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern')/-admingroup
subsys/dce/dfs-admin>DD:DFSKERN2>&1" RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
EXPORT CONFIGURED=I LMD=IOEDFSXP ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/dfsexport')/-a11 -verbose >DD:EXPORT
2>&1" RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
UNEXPORT CONFIGURED=M LMD=IOEDFSXP ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/dfsexport')/-detach -a11 -ver
>DD:UNEXPORT2>&1" RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BOSERVER CONFIGURED=N LMD=BOSERVER ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/boserver')/ >DD:BOSERVER 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC01 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC01 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc01')/ -tcid 0 >DD:BUTC01 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC02 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC02 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc02')/ -tcid 1 >DD:BUTC02 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC03 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC03 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc03')/ -tcid 2 >DD:BUTC03 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC04 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC04 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc04')/ -tcid 3 >DD:BUTC04 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC05 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC05 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc05')/ -tcid 4 >DD:BUTC05 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC06 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC06 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc06')/ -tcid 5 >DD:BUTC06 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC07 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC07 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc07')/ -tcid 6 >DD:BUTC07 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC08 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC08 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc08')/ -tcid 7 >DD:BUTC08 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
```

Figure 3. Daemon Configuration File

In the **ARG** (argument list) field of this example, **ENVAR** indicates the Language Environment® (LE) environment variables used, in this case, the **_EUV_HOME** environment variable is specified to identify the daemon's home directory. (The home directory contains the daemon's **envar** file. See “envar” on page 109 for more information.) Anything after the “/” character are program parameters. The “>” character is the redirection character which indicates that the output is redirected to the DD name that follows.

Important Note to Users: Under normal circumstances, you do **not** need to edit the Daemon Configuration File. Although there may be certain situations when the Daemon Configuration File has to be modified, it is recommended that you do so under the supervision of an IBM service representative.

The Daemon Configuration File can only be modified when the DFS server address space is not running.

The Daemon Configuration File is optional. When it is omitted, the defaults are as listed in Figure 3 except that **BOSERVER CONFIGURED=M**. When using only the SMB capability of the Distributed File Service (and not the DCE DFS capability), there is no need to start or reference the **BOSERVER** or the **BUTC0n** servers.

How dfscntl Starts the DFS Server Daemons

When a request arrives to start DFS server daemons, **dfscntl** looks at the Daemon Configuration File to see if the particular daemon or daemons are configured on the host. If the daemon is configured and is not running, **dfscntl** starts it and waits for the daemon to initialize successfully.

In case of the abnormal ending of any DFS server daemon, **dfscntl** tries to restart the daemon. **dfscntl** attempts to restart the daemon only if the daemon was running for at least the duration of the Minimum

Restart Interval, as specified in the Daemon Configuration File. If the daemon ended within this time interval, it is not restarted.

Note: When **dfscntl** restarts an abnormally terminated daemon, it does not correct the problem that caused the daemon to end unexpectedly. Thus, depending on the cause of the abnormal ending, the daemon may fail again after restarting because of the same error condition.

Using the **-nodfs** Option to Start **dfscntl**

You can start the DFS server address space without starting the configured DFS server daemons by using the **-nodfs** option of the **START** operator command, for example:

```
start dfs,param='-nodfs'
```

Changing Environment Variables

Each SMB server process uses environment variables to control how it behaves. When any processes environment variables are changed in the **envar** file in the home directory of the process, the process must be restarted to make them take effect.

Changing Mappings

The **dfskern** process optionally supports a mapping between SMB user IDs and OS/390 user IDs. The **smbidmap** file is located by means of the **_IOE_SMB_IDMAP** environment variable of **dfskern**. If the **smbidmap** file is updated (to add, change, or delete mappings), you must issue the **modify dfs,send dfskern,reload,smbmap** operator command to make them take effect. If you change the location of the **smbidmap** file, then the **_IOE_SMB_IDMAP** environment variable must be updated and the **dfskern** process must be restarted. It is recommended that the **smbidmap** file is located in the **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs** directory so that it is contained with the other customizable files.

Changing Shared Directories or Shared Printers

Shared directories and shared printers are defined in the **smbtab** file. If the **smbtab** file is changed to add or delete a share, the **dfsshare** command must be issued to make it take effect. Use the **-share** parameter of the **dfsshare** command to add a new share defined in **smbtab**. Use the **-detach** parameter of the **dfsshare** command to delete a share. The **dfsshare -detach** for the share must be issued before removing the share from the **smbtab**.

If the shared directory is contained in a file system that has not been exported before, or if there are additional file systems (below the file system containing the shared directory) that you want available to PC users, then you should add those file systems to the **dfstab** and the **devtab** and then issue the **dfsexport** command before issuing the **dfsshare** command.

If, however, you are using the dynamic export capability of the SMB server, **dfstab** and **devtab** entries are not required for file systems that are mounted below the file system containing the shared directory. See “Dynamic Export for HFS” on page 40 for information on the dynamic export capability.

Shared printers do not need entries in the **dfstab** nor the **devtab** and do not require the **dfsexport** command.

Changing the **hfsattr** or the **rfstab**

The **hfsattr** contains directives that map a file name extension (suffix) to an indication whether the data should be translated from ASCII to EBCDIC and vice versa. Its location is specified in **_IOE_HFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE** environment variable of the **dfskern** process. The **rfstab** contains creation (and other) attributes for RFS files. Its location is globally specified in the **_IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE** environment variable of the **dfskern** process. It can also be specified on an RFS file system basis in the **devtab attrfile** parameter. When the **hfsattr** or the global **rfstab** file is modified, the **dfskern** process must be restarted to make it take effect. If an RFS file system's **rfstab** is modified, the file system must be re-exported. That is, if it is already exported, it must be unexported and then exported. This is accomplished with the **dfsexport** command.

Changing the Infoprint Server DLL

If a new release of the Infoprint Server is installed or it is enabled, it can be activated for the SMB server by the **modify dfs,send dfskern,reload,print** system command. You also need to issue the **dfsshare** command to share the printers defined in **smbtab**.

Chapter 5. Networking Considerations

In order to use the shares that the OS/390 SMB server makes available, PC clients must be able to find the server on the network. The communications mechanism used is TCP/IP, and the methods of server discovery follow:

- The Domain Name Service (DNS)
- The Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS)
- Clients on the same workgroup and same subnet as the server
- The LMHOSTS file.

The order in which a server name is resolved to a TCP/IP address may vary depending on the client software and the service pack level of the Windows client software.

TCP/IP networks can use the Domain Name Service (DNS) to map server system names to IP addresses. In a DNS network, an entry tells clients in the network how to map the name of the server to its proper TCP/IP address.

If you want PC clients to access the OS/390 SMB server by using DNS, then you must ensure that the OS/390 hostname and IP address are added to the DNS database. Using DNS is generally the easiest way for clients to access the SMB server on a distributed network. In this case, you should ensure that the (TCP/IP) hostname and the (SMB) computer name are the same. (This is the default if you do not specify a computer name for the OS/390 SMB server by using the **_IOE_SMB_COMPUTER_NAME** environment variable of **dfskern**.) Also, if you have Windows 2000 clients, you should ensure that the SMB computer name is the same as the TCP/IP hostname.

Microsoft Windows NT/2000 servers can provide the Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS) which allows clients to map a computer name to the computer's actual TCP/IP address. If you use a WINS server in your network, you can configure the OS/390 SMB server to announce itself to the WINS server. Then you can configure PC clients to connect to the OS/390 SMB server by using the WINS server. The OS/390 SMB server announces itself to the primary WINS server (identified by the **_IOE_SMB_PRIMARY_WINS** environment variable of **dfskern**). If the primary WINS server cannot be contacted, the OS/390 SMB server announces itself to the secondary WINS server (identified by the **_IOE_SMB_SECONDARY_WINS** environment variable of **dfskern**). The OS/390 SMB server does not, itself, act as a WINS server. It can, however, act as a WINS proxy. That is, it can accept WINS requests from PC clients and forward them to a WINS server if the **_IOE_SMB_WINS_PROXY** environment variable of **dfskern** is specified as **ON**. The PC clients would have the IP address of the OS/390 SMB server specified as the WINS Server IP address.

In the **_IOE_SMB_DOMAIN_NAME** environment variable of **dfskern**, you can specify the name of the domain or workgroup that the OS/390 SMB server should be a member of. This can be the name of an existing domain or workgroup in your LAN environment. If possible, put your OS/390 SMB server in the same domain or workgroup as your client PCs.

An OS/390 SMB server that is in the same workgroup and the same subnet as the PC clients appear in the Windows Network Neighborhood without any additional configuration on the server or those PC clients. An OS/390 SMB server that is on the same subnet as a Primary Domain Controller that is acting as a WINS server appears in the Network Neighborhood of PCs that contain the WINS server IP address. The OS/390 SMB server announces itself to the Browser by using subnet broadcast on UDP port 138. It does this every Browser announcement interval (specified by the **_IOE_SMB_BROWSE_INTERVAL** environment variable of **dfskern**). Those PC clients can also find the OS/390 SMB server by using subnet

broadcast to UDP port 137. The OS/390 SMB server responds to this broadcast. PC clients that want to use the Network Neighborhood function should have the NetBEUI protocol installed.

PC client operating systems can provide static configuration files that can map server system names to TCP/IP addresses. These files are typically more difficult to manage than a solution that involves more centralized control (for example, a DNS or WINS server). This is because the network administrator must configure each PC client individually. Static configuration files are very useful, however, in large, distributed networks. In this environment, clients and servers exist in different subnets (network segments) and possibly different workgroups (domains). Static configuration files help clients locate servers.

Windows 9x and Windows NT/2000 clients provide the LMHOSTS file (or the RFCNAMES.LST file for OS/2) that can map server computer names to IP addresses. LMHOSTS contains IP addresses and server computer names for which to map those addresses. You can use these files to map the IP address of the OS/390 SMB server for clients. This allows clients to find the OS/390 SMB server in a large, distributed network environment.

You can find more information about LMHOSTS files in the sample LMHOSTS file that is provided with your Windows operating system or the RFCNAMES.LST file provided with your OS/2 operating system. Additional information is available in your PC operating system documentation.

Chapter 6. Mapping SMB User IDs to OS/390 User IDs

The local security subsystem (for example, RACF) determines if the client is authorized to access HFS or RFS directories and files. Because the local security subsystem does not recognize SMB user IDs, the SMB user ID that comes to the OS/390 SMB server must be mapped to a local OS/390 user ID. This mapping is defined in the **smbidmap** file, which is read during **dfskern** initialization or as a result of the **modify dfs,send dfskern,reload,smbmap** operator command. The **smbidmap** file is an HFS file, and its location is specified in the **_IOE_SMB_IDMAP** environment variable of **dfskern**. It contains SMB user IDs and their corresponding OS/390 user IDs. This information is used by **dfskern** to map SMB user IDs to OS/390 user IDs. The following procedure may be used to map SMB user IDs to OS/390 user IDs:

- Create an **smbidmap** file.
- Set the **_IOE_SMB_IDMAP** environment variable.
- Stop and restart the **dfskern** process.

Note: If **_IOE_SMB_IDMAP** environment variable already has the name of the **smbidmap** file and the **smbidmap** is just being updated, the **modify dfs,send dfskern,reload,smbmap** command can be used to activate the updated mappings.

Each of these procedures are described in the following sections.

Creating an smbidmap File

The **smbidmap** file is a text file that the administrator creates and maintains. It must be an HFS file. Any editor available on OS/390 USS may be used (for example, oedit, vi, etc.) The **smbidmap** file contains one or more mapping declarations and has the following general format:

```
SMB-user-ID1
OS/390-user-ID1

SMB-user-ID2
OS/390-user-ID2
...
```

Each entry has two elements: SMB user ID and OS/390 user ID. A blank line is required between entries. The following explains each element in an SMB user ID mapping entry:

SMB-user-ID or *Domain/SMB-user-ID* or *Workgroup/SMB-user-ID*

Specifies the client's SMB identity. This may either be a simple SMB user ID (when you do not care what the domain of the SMB user ID is) or a fully qualified name (for clients within and outside the domain/workgroup). The SMB user ID can be up to 20 characters in length. A Domain (Workgroup) name can be up to 15 characters in length.

- *SMB-user-ID* is assumed to be in any domain.
- *Domain/SMB-user-ID* is assumed to be in the specified domain.
- *Workgroup/SMB-user-ID* is assumed to be in the specified workgroup.

OS/390-user-ID

Specifies the OS/390 user ID of the client. All potential SMB clients must have OS/390 user IDs on the system where the SMB server is running.

Another entry that is allowed in **smbidmap** is:

*
=

This means that if an OS/390 user ID cannot be determined, the SMB user ID should be used as the OS/390 user ID. This only occurs if the SMB user ID is eight characters or less.

Each SMB user can only have one mapping to an OS/390 user. However, different SMB users can be mapped to the same OS/390 user, if desired.

Setting the `_IOE_SMB_IDMAP` Environment Variable

The `_IOE_SMB_IDMAP` environment variable must be set to the name of the **smbidmap** file used by the SMB server. The declaration of this environment variable can be made in the **envvar** file of the **dfskern** process located in `/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envvar`.

For example, if the HFS path name of the **smbidmap** file is `/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/smbidmap`, this variable is set by the following entry in the **envvar** file:

```
_IOE_SMB_IDMAP=/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/smbidmap
```

Modifying and Deleting Identity Mapping Entries

Edit the **smbidmap** file to modify or delete mapping entries. For these changes to take effect, you have to either restart the SMB server or reload the **smbidmap** file by using the **modify dfs,send dfskern,reload,smbmap** command. See “Chapter 12. OS/390 System Commands” on page 85 for more information on the **modify** command.

Determining the OS/390 User ID from the SMB User ID

The following decisions are made for how **dfskern** determines the OS/390 user ID from the SMB user ID:

- The **smbidmap** table is read during SMB server initialization or due to a **modify dfs,send dfskern,reload,smbmap** operator command.
- When an SMB comes to the SMB server,
 - If an SMB user ID and domain are in the SMB, then search for a match in **smbidmap**.
 - If no match, use just the SMB user ID from the SMB and search for a match in the SMB user ID and “don’t care” domain. (These are entries in **smbidmap** that do not have a domain).

- If there is still no match, see if there is an * = entry. If so, use the SMB user ID from the SMB as an OS/390 user ID.
- If a match was found, attempt an OS/390 logon with the mapped ID and the password.
- If there is still no OS/390 user ID, or if the logon attempt was unsuccessful, see if the **_IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT** environment variable is specified. If so, use its value as the OS/390 user ID (without a password). This is sometimes known as a guest login.

The SMB client request is denied if the SMB server cannot determine a mapping to an OS/390 user ID. For example, if the SMB user ID is unspecified or not mapped, or mapped but not in RACF and if **_IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT** is not specified or the **_IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT** user ID is not in RACF, the client request is denied.

How the SMB User ID is Determined

The SMB user ID is determined from the user ID specified when the user logged in to Windows or OS/2. (Windows NT/2000 provides some other options.) This user ID is mapped to an OS/390 user ID, and the password is taken as the password for the OS/390 user ID (when using clear passwords) or the OS/390 user's SMB password in their RACF DCE segment (when using encrypted passwords). See "Logon Considerations" on page 51 for information on clear passwords and encrypted passwords.

The simplest method for using the OS/390 SMB server is to logon to Windows with your SMB user ID that the SMB server can map to an OS/390 user ID. When a drive letter is mapped to an OS/390 shared directory, that user ID is sent to the SMB server. If you are prompted to enter your password, you should enter your OS/390 password (when using clear passwords) or your SMB password from your RACF DCE segment (when using encrypted passwords).

The password that you logged onto Windows with is sent to the OS/390 SMB server. If your OS/390 password (when using clear passwords) or your SMB password from your RACF DCE segment (when using encrypted passwords) is different than your Windows password, you should specify your OS/390 or SMB password on the **net use** command. If your Windows password is different than your OS/390 or SMB password and you do not specify it on the **net use** command (or you specify it incorrectly), you are logged in as the DFSDFLT user ID, if the **_IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT** environment variable is specified on the SMB server. If the **_IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT** environment variable is not specified and you specified an incorrect password, you may be prompted for the correct password or denied.

On Windows NT/2000, you can specify your SMB user ID on the map network drive pull down and you can specify your SMB user ID (and password) on the **net use** command. This allows you to use a different SMB user ID than the one you used to logon to Windows NT or Windows 2000.

Chapter 7. Sharing Files

Before PCs can access files on OS/390, a shared directory must be created. A shared directory represents the starting point or top directory of a “tree” of directories and files. A PC user can access the shared directory and the subdirectories and files based on the user’s authorization to those items. A PC user cannot reference a directory (or file) that is higher than the shared directory.

Before a shared directory can be created, the file system containing the directory to be shared must be exported. (A file system is identified by its OS/390 data set name.) The following discussion assumes that you are familiar with HFS file systems, UNIX System Services concepts, and OS/390 data sets.

Note: In order to export an HFS file system, the SMB server must run on the system that owns the HFS file system. You may want to consider using **NOAUTOMOVE** on the **MOUNT** for HFS file systems exported by the SMB server so that they are not taken over in the event of a system recycle and they are available for automatic re-export by the SMB server.

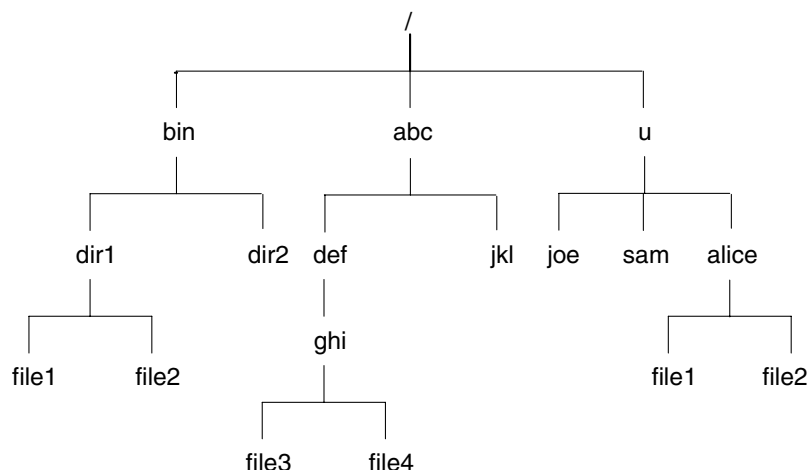
Sharing HFS Files

This section discusses the HFS file system.

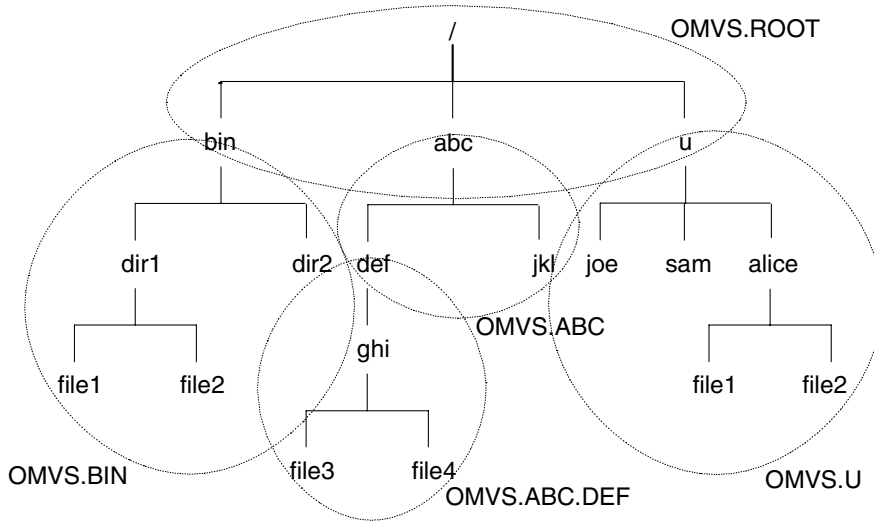
Exporting and Sharing HFS File Systems

An HFS file system must be exported before a directory contained in it can be shared. Exporting is done on an HFS file system basis and tells OS/390 UNIX System Services that a file system is being made available to clients by a File Exporter (that is, the OS/390 Distributed File Services SMB File/Print Server).

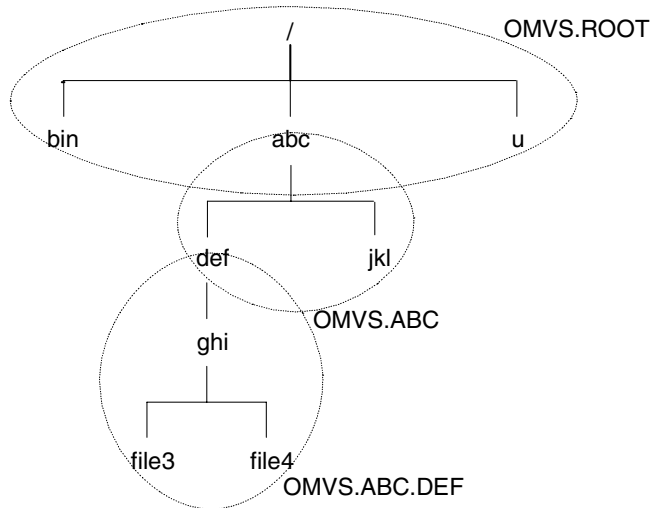
Sharing is done on a directory tree basis and allows PC clients to access data on HFS. In order to allow a directory to be shared, the file system that the directory is contained in must be exported. Suppose we had the following (purposely simplified) entire file hierarchy on an OS/390 system:



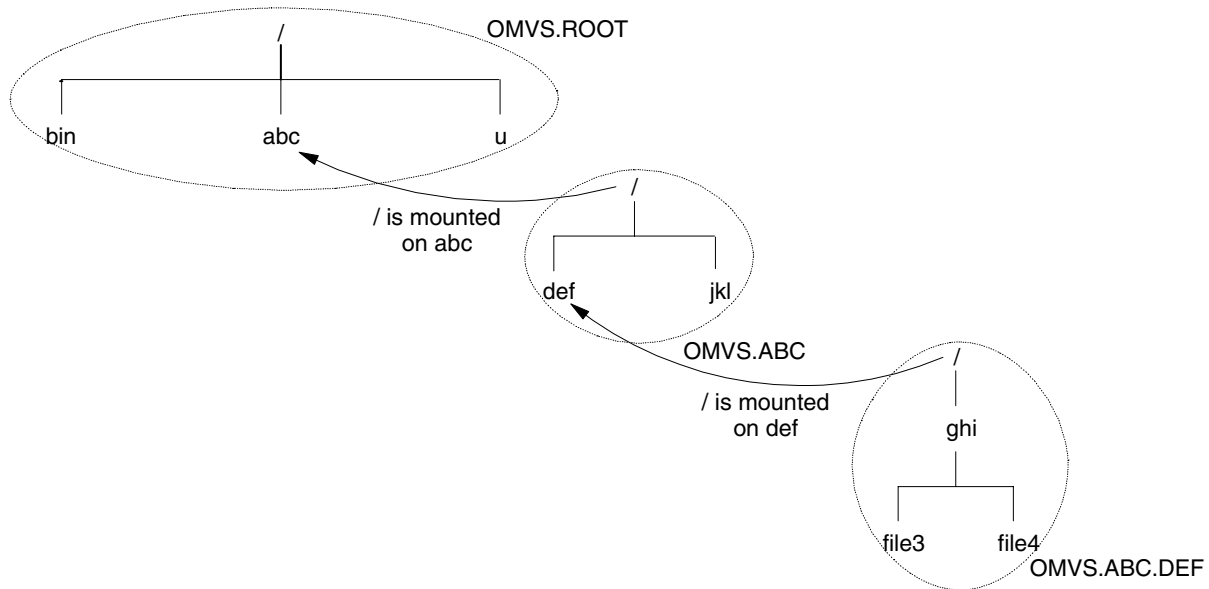
This file hierarchy is made up of separate file systems mounted together. See the following representation of this:



The ovals represent the individual file systems. There are five file systems in this hierarchy. Each of these file systems has a data set name. The top file system is referred to as the **root** file system. Its data set name is OMVS.ROOT. Each of the lower file systems are mounted on top of a directory in the file system above it. There are three file systems mounted on three directories that are contained in the root file system. One is mounted on the directory **/bin** (data set OMVS.BIN), another is mounted on **/abc** (data set OMVS.ABC), and the third is mounted on **/u** (data set OMVS.U). The fifth file system is mounted on **/abc/def** (data set OMVS.ABC.DEF). The data set name of a file system can be displayed with the **df** command. The following diagram examines the **/abc/def/ghi** path a little more closely.



The `/abc/def/ghi` path consists of three file systems mounted as follows:



If you want to create a share for directory `/abc/def/ghi`, you must export the file system where the `(/ghi)` directory resides (`OMVS.ABC.DEF`).

In addition, if there are other file systems below the file system containing the shared directory, you may want to export these also so that PC clients can reference data in those file systems. They should be added to `dfstab` and `devtab` and exported using the `dfsexport` command (refer to “`smbtab`, `dfstab`, and `devtab` Entries for HFS” on page 37 for more information). Otherwise, a PC client is denied access to directories and files in file systems that are not exported.

smbtab, dfstab, and devtab Entries for HFS

The files that the SMB File Server uses to relate the shared directory and its exported file system are the `smbtab`, the `dfstab`, and the `devtab`. (They are all located in `/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs`.) A common **minor device number** is used to tie related entries in these three files together. The `smbtab` is used to define the shared directory. The `dfstab` and the `devtab` are used to define the file system to be exported.

In `smbtab`, the minor device number is specified using the format `/dev/ufsn`, where *n* is a locally assigned unique minor device number that must refer to the HFS file system data set where the root of the shared directory path name resides (that is the file system where the first `/` resides). This should always be the file system where the directory that you want to share resides.

In `dfstab`, the minor device number is specified using the format `/dev/ufsn` to identify the assigned unique identifiers for the HFS file system.

In `devtab`, the minor device number is specified using the format `define_ufs n` to identify the data set name for the HFS file system.

For example, if the shared directory is `/ghi`, then the `smbtab`, `dfstab`, and `devtab` entries might be:

smbtab:

```

/dev/ufs2  myshare  ufs  "My share description"  r/w  100  /ghi
dfstab:
/dev/ufs2  hfs2    ufs   101  0,,1715
devtab:
define_ufs 2
OMVS.ABC.DEF

```

Notice that you did not need to export the file systems that are above the OMVS.ABC.DEF file system. That is, you did not need to create **dfstab** and **devtab** entries for OMVS.ROOT and OMVS.ABC.

If, however, there were additional file systems below the shared directory, you may want to export those by specifying them in the **dfstab** and **devtab** too since PC users may want to access those directories and files. Alternatively, you can use the dynamic export capability. See "Dynamic Export for HFS" on page 40.

As another example, if you wanted to share the entire OS/390 file hierarchy with PC users from the root on down, then the **smbtab**, **dfstab**, and **devtab** entries might be:

```

smbtab:
/dev/ufs4  hfsroot  ufs  "My share description"  r/w  100  /
dfstab:
/dev/ufs2  hfs2    ufs   101  0,,1715
/dev/ufs3  hfs3    ufs   102  0,,1718
/dev/ufs4  hfs4    ufs   103  0,,1721
/dev/ufs5  hfs5    ufs   104  0,,1724
/dev/ufs6  hfs6    ufs   105  0,,1727
devtab:
define_ufs 2
OMVS.ABC.DEF
define_ufs 3
OMVS.ABC
define_ufs 4
OMVS.ROOT
define_ufs 5
OMVS.BIN
define_ufs 6
OMVS.U

```

Notice that only one share is required (in **smbtab**) since only one directory is being shared but all the HFS file systems must be exported (by including them in the **dfstab** and **devtab** or by using dynamic export) since we want the PC user to be able to reference any file or directory below the root directory. If you are including them in the **dfstab** and **devtab**, you should issue the **dfsexport -all** command to ensure that all the file systems are exported before the **dfsshare -share hfsroot** command is issued to share the directory. (For more information, see "dfsexport" on page 122 and "dfsshare" on page 126.)

Creating a Shared Directory for HFS

This section describes the steps that are involved in creating a shared directory for HFS data. The HFS file system must be locally mounted on the OS/390 system. Refer to the *OS/390 UNIX System Services Planning* book, SC28-1890, for information on how to create and mount an HFS file system.

To create a shared directory, perform the following steps:

1. Choose the HFS directory that you want to share. (For example, **/abc/def/ghi**)

- Determine the HFS file system data set name that the directory **/abc/def/ghi** resides in. If you do not know the HFS file system data set name, the UNIX System Services **df** command can help with this task. The **df** command displays file system data set names and their mount points. Refer to the *OS/390 UNIX System Services Command Reference*, SC28-1892, for information on the **df** command. (For example, data set OMVS.ABC.DEF might be mounted on **/abc/def**.)

The following is an example of the **df** command and may help with this determination:

```
# df /abc/def/ghi
Mounted on      Filesystem          Avail/Total   Files      Status
/abc/def        (OMVS.ABC.DEF)     544/1440     4294967295 Available
```

This shows the mount point and the HFS file system data set name of the file system mounted on that mount point. The HFS file system data set name is in parentheses (in this example, **OMVS.ABC.DEF**).

- If there is no entry in **devtab** for this HFS file system, you must add an entry in **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/devtab** which maps a unique minor device number to the HFS file system you want to export and share. Choose a unique minor device number (for example, **2**) that is not in any other **define_ufs** statement and put it in the **define_ufs** statement. Put the HFS file system name (in this example, **OMVS.ABC.DEF**) on the next line. An example of an entry for an HFS file system might look like the following:

```
* HFS devices
define_ufs 2
OMVS.ABC.DEF
```

- If there is an entry in **devtab** for this HFS file system, you must add a corresponding entry in **dfstab**. Use the same minor device number (in this example, **2**) in the device parameter (so in this example, it would be **/dev/ufs2**). Use a unique file system name (for example, **hfs2**), a file system type of **ufs** and a unique file system ID (for example, **101**). Finally, use a unique fileset ID (for example, **0,,1715**). An example **dfstab** entry might look like this:

```
/dev/ufs2 hfs2 ufs 101 0,,1715
```

Note: If you are using only SMB protocols (and not DCE DFS protocols⁴), you can use the same number for all the numeric values in a **dfstab** entry as long as the number used is unique. For example, the **dfstab** entry might look like this:

```
/dev/ufs2 hfs2 ufs 2 0,,2
```

- Add an entry in **smbtab** for the directory you want to share. Use the same minor device number (in this example, **2**) in the device name parameter (so in this example, it would be **/dev/ufs2**). Choose a unique share name (for example, **myshare**), a file system type of **ufs**, a description, share permission (for example, **r/w**), maximum users (for example, **100**) and the directory name (in this example **/ghi**). The directory name is relative to the root of the file system that the device name refers to.

```
/dev/ufs2 myshare ufs "My share description" r/w 100 /ghi
```

- Issue the **dfsshare** command to cause the new share to be made available to PC users.

⁴ If you are using both SMB and DCE DFS protocols, the file system ID must be assigned by the **fts crfldbentry** command. Refer to "Appendix C. Using Both SMB and DCE DFS" on page 151 for more information.

```
# dfsshare -share myshare
```

At this point, a PC user can connect to this share.

If there were additional file systems below the shared directory, you may want to export those too since PC users may want to access those directories and files. That is, if there were one or more subdirectories below the **ghi** directory, and there were one or more file systems mounted on those directories or their subdirectories, those file systems could be exported to make them available to PC users of the share named **myshare**. Those file systems would be specified in **dfstab** and **devtab** with different unique minor device numbers. Alternatively, you can use the dynamic export capability. See “Dynamic Export for HFS” on page 40.

If there was an additional directory at the same level as the **ghi** directory and you wanted to share that directory, the minor device number would be the same as the share for the **ghi** directory (that is, it would be 2) since that directory is also contained in the OMVS.ABC.DEF file system.

Removing a Shared Directory for HFS

A shared directory may be made unavailable by issuing the **dfsshare** command with the **-detach** option. For example, if you want to stop the shared directory named **myshare** from being available to PC clients, you would issue the following **dfsshare** command:

```
# dfsshare -share myshare -detach
```

This command makes the shared directory unavailable until the OS/390 SMB server is restarted or the **dfsshare** command is issued to make it available. Since the shared directory is still in the **smbtab**, the shared directory would be made available again to PC clients. In order to make the shared directory permanently unavailable, it must be removed from the **smbtab** file.

Making a shared directory unavailable does not affect whether the underlying file systems are exported (that is, they remain exported). There may be other shares that apply to those underlying file systems. The **dfsexport** command may be used to unexport file systems.

Dynamic Export for HFS

Previously, in order to make HFS file systems available to PC users via the SMB server, the administrator had to create a **dfstab** and **devtab** entry for each HFS file system. This allows the SMB server to export them at SMB server start up or on command. HFS file systems must also be mounted at the time the SMB server exports them. This meant that the SMB server could not support HFS automounted file systems.

The SMB server now has an optional function called dynamic export. Usage of dynamic export allows the SMB server to support HFS automounted file systems. That is, when dynamic export is used, PC clients are able to access data in HFS file systems that are automounted. (See the *OS/390 UNIX System Services Planning* book, SC28-1890, for information on automounted file systems.)

Note: The SMB server still has the restriction that a shared HFS file system being made available to PC clients must be owned by the system that the SMB server is running on.

An environment variable (**_IOE_DYNAMIC_EXPORT=ON**) in the **dfskern** process, enables dynamic export. When dynamic export is enabled, the SMB server can "discover" file systems that are mounted but not yet exported and can dynamically export them. A file system is discovered by the SMB server

when a PC user references a directory (for example, by using the **cd** command) that is a mount point. This causes the SMB server to "cross into" the mounted file system. (The capability to cross file systems is controlled by the **_IOE_SMB_CROSS_MOUNTS** environment variable in the **dfskern** process.) If it is determined that the file system is not yet exported, the SMB server (dynamically) exports it. The SMB server then continues to handle the PC user request. This dynamic export occurs even though there may be no **dfstab** or **devtab** entry for the file system. The information that would be in the **dfstab** and **devtab** entry can be determined (or assigned) by the SMB server. Note that when a PC user references a remote directory that is under control of automount, this causes the SMB server to reference the directory and this in turn causes the correct file system to be automounted. So, the file system is mounted by the time the SMB server gets control back from referencing it.

Dynamic export is actually independent of whether automount is used. That is, the discovery and dynamic export of file systems occurs whether the file system was automounted or statically mounted. This means that if you do not specify **dfstab** and **devtab** entries for file systems that are "crossed into", the SMB server takes care of those file systems on its own. The only file systems that must have a **dfstab** and **devtab** entry are file systems that are the root of a share (that is, file systems that are represented as the first / in the **smbtab** Directory Path Name entry).

As a simple case, when dynamic export is used, it is possible to make the entire HFS tree (including automounted file systems) available to PC users by specifying / of the root file system as the shared directory in **smbtab** and the root file system in **dfstab** and **devtab**. (The root file system is also referred to as the version file system.) No other entries are required. Of course, PC users can only access data that they are authorized to. Also, they cannot write to file systems that are mounted read-only. Here is an example of what the **smbtab**, **dfstab** and **devtab** entries might look like:

smbtab:

```
/dev/ufs4 hfsroot ufs "My share description" r/w 100 /
```

dfstab:

```
/dev/ufs4 hfs4 ufs 103 0,,1721
```

devtab:

```
define_ufs 4  
OMVS.ROOT
```

When dynamic export is used, it is still allowable for the administrator to specify **dfstab** and **devtab** entries. This allows you to use your current **dfstab** and **devtab** entries and still take advantage of the dynamic export function. When dynamic export assigns numbers for file systems, it uses large numbers.

- Minor device numbers start at 10000
- File system IDs start at 100000
- Fileset IDs start at 100000.

If you add **dfstab** and **devtab** entries, you should use numbers that are lower than these so as not to interfere with dynamically assigned numbers.

In addition, a **devtab** entry can be specified without a **dfstab** entry to set the translation option for a file system. This entry is used when the SMB server crosses into that file system and dynamically exports it. Alternatively, the translation option can be inherited from the parent file system when there is no **devtab** entry. The **_IOE_INHERIT_TRANSLATION=ON** environment variable in the **dfskern** process controls whether the file system translation option can be inherited from the parent file system.

If you are using dynamic export, the administrator has the ability to control whether the SMB server should dynamically unexport a file system if it has not been referenced for a period of time. Only file systems that are not the root of a share are dynamically unexported. The **_IOE_EXPORT_TIMEOUT**

environment variable in the **dfskern** process is used to specify this. Unexporting an unreferenced file system frees resources in the SMB server. Later, if the file system is referenced again, it is dynamically exported again. There is a relationship between the SMB server export timeout value and the OS/390 Automount Facility **delay** timeout value. Automount waits (at least) the automount **delay** timeout period after the file system has been dynamically unexported before attempting to unmount it.

As the PC user **cd**'s down the tree, file systems of different file system types may be encountered. Some are supported by the SMB server and some are not. The file system types that are supported by the SMB server are HFS, TFS, and AUTOMNT. The NFS and DFSC file system types are not supported.

If you are using DCE DFS and SMB (or DCE DFS alone), you cannot use the dynamic export capability. Dynamic export is disabled when **_IOE_PROTOCOL_RPC=ON**.

Working with Automounted File Systems and Home Directories:

It is common for an OMVS user's home directory to be automounted. This means that the user's home directory does not exist and the file system is not mounted until the home directory is referenced. See the *UNIX System Services Planning* book, SC28-1890, for information on automount. Using dynamic export, you can specify the root of the automount file system as the shared directory. For example, consider the following configuration files:

Automount Facility Master File:

```
/u          /etc/home.map
```

MapName Policy File: (/etc/home.map)

```
Name        *
Type         HFS
Filesystem   OMVS.HOME.<uc_name>
Mode         rdwr
Duration     60
Delay        0
```

smbidmap:

```
smith
CMSMITH
```

```
jones
TSJONES
```

smbtab:

```
/dev/ufs10  homeshare  ufs  "Root of Home Directories"  r/w  100  /
```

dfstab:

```
/dev/ufs10  hfs10  ufs  10  0,,10
```

devtab:

```
define_ufs 10
"*AMD/u"   text
```

With this configuration, a user could connect to the shared directory named homeshare (**net use h: \\computer1\homeshare**), and she could then **cd** to her home directory (**cd h:\cmsmith**). This causes automount and dynamic export of the user's home file system to occur.

However, this has several possible usage problems:

- When a user connects to the shared directory, the shared directory is referenced (for example, **/u** on OMVS), but the actual home directory is not referenced (for example, **/u/cmsmith** on OMVS). Therefore, the cmsmith directory is not listed if a user does a **DIR** from an MS-DOS window or uses Windows Explorer to click on the shared directory drive letter (since the home directory does not exist

yet). The home directory is not created by the Automount Facility until it is directly referenced by name. This requires the user to **cd** to the home directory in an MS-DOS window. (If the user tries to create a new folder with the home directory name, Windows first tries to create a folder by the name of **New Folder**. This causes the Automount Facility to try to mount a file system called **OMVS.HOME.NEW FOLDER** and this is an invalid name.)

- In addition, the name that the user needs to **cd** to is not the Windows user ID but rather the OS/390 user ID (the OS/390 user ID that is mapped by the **smbidmap** file; or the guest user ID). This name may not be obvious to the PC user.
- Even after the user issues **cd** to the correct directory, the file system may get unexported and unmounted after a while if there is no access to the file system for a period of time. This may put the user back into the situation where her home directory doesn't exist again.

To resolve this, you could create a separate shared directory for each user that points directly to the user's home directory. For example:

smbtab:

```
/dev/ufs10 smith ufs "Smith's Home Directory" r/w 100 /cmsmith
/dev/ufs10 jones ufs "Jones' Home Directory" r/w 100 /tsjones
.
.
.
```

dfstab:

```
/dev/ufs10 hfs10 ufs 10 0,,10
```

devtab:

```
define_ufs 10
"*AMD/u" text
```

This technique also has several disadvantages:

- You need a separate **smbtab** entry for each user. As users are added and deleted from the system, you must add or delete an **smbtab** entry.
- Since each shared directory resides in a corresponding automounted file system, none of those file systems ever get unexported (or unmounted) after they are referenced.
- Each PC user must net use to a different shared directory name.

Recommended Technique for PC User Access to Automounted Home Directories:

The SMB server defines a special keyword to be used in the **Directory path name** in an **smbtab** entry. The keyword is **&USERID**. It represents the PC user's OS/390 user ID. This keyword allows a single shared directory (that is, a single **smbtab** entry) to mean a different directory based on the OS/390 user ID of the PC user connecting to the shared directory name. When a user connects to this shared directory name, a new (special) share is created. This share has a connection reference count that is incremented when the PC user connects to the shared directory name. The reference count is decremented when the PC user disconnects from the shared directory name by issuing a **net use h: /d**. When the reference count is zero, the user's home file system is eligible to be unexported by the SMB server and then unmounted by the Automount Facility. The user would need to connect to the shared directory name again to access the home directory. In addition, if the user was inactive on the session for the **_IOE_SMB_IDLE_TIMEOUT** time period, the session would be disconnected. This would also decrement the reference count and if zero, an unexport and unmount would occur. In this case, when the

user references the drive letter again, the mount and export would occur automatically. For example, with the following entries:

smbtab:

```
/dev/ufs10 myhomedir ufs "Each user's Home Directory" r/w 100 /&USERID
/dev/ufs10 homeshare ufs "Root of All Home Directories" r/w 100 /
```

dfstab:

```
/dev/ufs10 hfs10 ufs 10 0,,10
```

devtab:

```
define_ufs 10
"*AMD/u" text
```

User smith could issue the following **net use** command:

```
net use h: \\computer1\myhomedir
```

This would cause the SMB server to reference the /u/cmsmith directory. This would cause the Automount Facility to create the cmsmith directory in the *AMD/u file system. Then the Automount Facility would mount smith's home directory file system on the /u/cmsmith directory. The SMB server would then export smith's home directory file system and then create a (special) share and increment the reference count. PC user smith would then be able to issue **DIR** in an MS-DOS window for the drive letter or use Windows Explorer to click on the drive letter to see the contents of the home directory.

If necessary, smith could still access jones' home directory (assuming proper authorization) by issuing **net use x: \\computer1\homeshare** and then **cd x:\tsjones**.

Note: The OS/390 user ID is most likely in uppercase. If the user's home directory name is lowercase, the SMB server finds it since it does a case insensitive search. However, this means that you should not have two home directory names that only differ by the case of their letters. If you do, the SMB server may find the wrong home directory.

File Data Translation for HFS

OS/390 Distributed File Service SMB support provides basic support for character data translation. There are several mechanisms provided to allow an administrator to specify when file data should be translated. Character data translation can be:

- Based on the HFS file format attribute,
- A global specification based on the file name suffix (**hfsattr** file),
- Specified on a file system basis (**devtab hfs-data-set-name text** or **binary** option),
- Specified on a file system basis based on file's contents (**devtab hfs-data-set-name auto** option),
- Inherited from a parent file system's translation option (**_IOE_INHERIT_TRANSLATION=ON** environment variable is set to **ON** in **dfskern**),
- A global specification to translate or not for all HFS file systems exported (**_IOE_HFS_TRANSLATION** set to **ON** or **OFF** in **dfskern**),
- A global specification based on file's contents for all HFS file systems exported (**_IOE_HFS_TRANSLATION** environment variable set to **AUTO** in **dfskern**).

The following sequence determines whether file data is translated:

1. If the file exists and has a non-zero file format attribute, then a value of 1 (meaning binary) causes no translation to be done. A value greater than 1 causes translation to be done. Refer to the *OS/390*

UNIX System Services Programming: Assembler Callable Services Reference, SC28-1899, for information on the **stat** and the **chattr** callable services. These callable services can be used to query or change a file format attribute. The OS/390 SMB server does not convert between different end of line delimiters.

Note: The OMVS ISPF Shell (IShell) can be used to query or set the file format attribute for a file. Choose a file and then choose attributes. This shows the file format attribute (NA, Binary, NL, CR, LF, CRLF, LFCR, CRNL). Choose Edit and then File Format. You can then change the file format. The IShell uses choice numbers for the file format attributes that are one greater than those used for the actual file format value (that is, a file format of binary has a value of 1 but the Binary choice in the IShell is 2).

2. If the file does not exist or has a zero file format attribute, then, if an **hfsattr** file is specified (by the **dfskern_IOE_HFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE** environment variable), and the file name suffix matches a directive in the **hfsattr** file, then that controls whether translation occurs. Refer to “hfsattr” on page 110.
3. The file system's **devtab** translation option (**text**, **binary**, or **auto**) is used when no **hfsattr** file is specified, or if the file name suffix does not match any of the directives in the **hfsattr** file, or the file name has no suffix. Refer to “devtab” on page 103.
4. The file system's inherited translation option is used if **_IOE_INHERIT_TRANSLATION** is **ON** in the **dfskern** process and no **devtab** translation option is specified for the file system. Refer to “Dynamic Export for HFS” on page 40 and “Appendix A. Environment Variables in SMB” on page 131.
5. The **dfskern_IOE_HFS_TRANSLATION** environment variable is used if the file system does not inherit a translation option. Refer to “Appendix A. Environment Variables in SMB” on page 131.

The file format attribute for HFS files is set if it is not already set, and either an **hfsattr** file was used to determine whether to translate or **auto** (on the file system or globally) was used to determine whether to translate. If the file is determined to be text, the file format attribute is set to 2 (NL). If the file is determined to be binary, the file format attribute is set to 1 (Binary).

Translation is done using ISO8859-1 for network data and the local code page for the **dfskern** process is used for data in HFS.

You should use caution if you change an HFS **devtab** option from **binary** to **text** or from **text** to **binary**. If you have already stored a file under one option (for example, **text**), and then you change the option (to, for example, **binary**), the data has been translated from ASCII to EBCDIC when it was originally written to HFS, but is not translated back from EBCDIC to ASCII when it is read. This causes the data to appear garbled to the PC user. Also note that if you are using dynamic export and translation inheritance, the translation option is effectively changed if you first mount the file system (that has no **devtab** translation option) under a text file system and later under a binary file system.

Authorization for HFS

When a PC user attempts to access a directory or file, the normal OS/390 HFS file authorization mechanism is used. The PC user's SMB user ID is mapped to a local OS/390 user ID and that OS/390 user ID is used to determine if the user is authorized to the file or directory. See “Chapter 6. Mapping SMB User IDs to OS/390 User IDs” on page 31 for information on how SMB users are mapped to OS/390 users. An OS/390 user ID's authorization to a directory or file is determined by the permission bits and the user and group IDs of the directory or file. Refer to the *OS/390 UNIX System Services User's Guide*, SC28-1891, for more information on HFS security.

The only authorization that a PC user can directly change is the write (w) permission of a file. It can be changed by modifying the read-only attribute of a file. Setting the read-only attribute on turns the write permission off, and vice versa. To change the read-only attribute, use the **attrib** command or right click on the file from Windows Explorer and choose Properties. The PC user must be the owner of the file or directory (or must have a **UID=0**) to change the write permission. The read-only attribute for a directory does not stop a user from creating or deleting files in the directory. So, modifying the read-only attribute of a directory does not change the write permission of a directory and is in effect, ignored by the SMB server.

Note: When the read-only attribute is turned on (which turns off write permission), all the write permissions (for user, group and other) are turned off. When the read-only attribute is turned off (which turns on write permission), only those write permissions that intersect with the default create permissions are turned on. Default create permissions are specified in the **smbtab** entry for the shared directory or globally, on the **_IOE_SMB_DIR_PERMS** and the **_IOE_SMB_FILE_PERMS** environment variables.

From experimentation, it appears that when a read-only file is copied via drag and drop, the read-only attribute is maintained on the new file. However, when the MS-DOS **copy** command is used, the read-only attribute is not maintained.

When a PC user does not have read and execute permission to a directory, the contents of the directory is not listed. The user is allowed to **cd** to the directory but when a **dir** is issued, access is denied or the contents of the directory shows up as if it were empty. The user is not allowed to access files in that directory. When a PC user does not have write and execute permission to a directory, they are not able to create, erase or rename a file (or directory) that is contained in that directory. When a PC user does not have read permission to a file, they are not able to read (or execute) the file. When a PC user does not have write permission to a file, they are not able to change the contents of the file.

Free Space for HFS

The amount of free space that is reported for a drive letter that is mapped to a shared directory that resides in an OS/390 HFS file system is based on the amount of free space in the file system that contains the shared directory. That is, if you cross into a lower file system by referencing subdirectories that reside in a lower file system, the free space does not reflect the amount of free space in the lower file system. Rather, the free space left in the file system that contains the shared directory is reported.

Sharing RFS Files

This section discusses the RFS file system.

Exporting and Sharing RFS File Systems

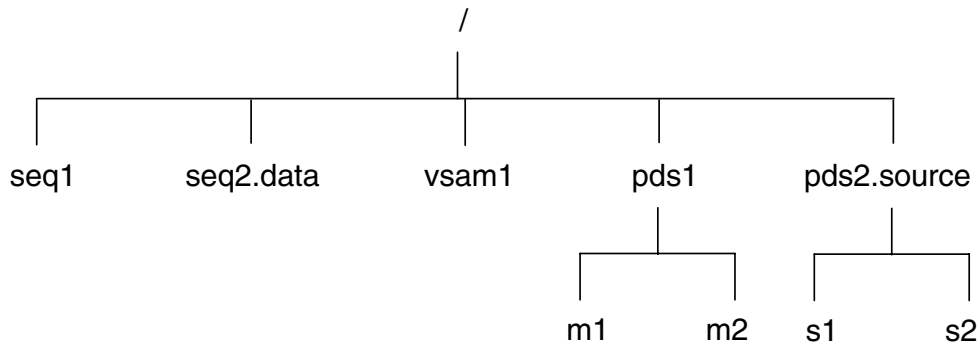
A Record File System (RFS) is a collection of OS/390 data sets with a common data set name prefix. The OS/390 data sets supported include sequential data sets (on DASD), partitioned data sets (PDS), partitioned data sets extended (PDSE) and Virtual Storage Access Method (VSAM) data sets. These data sets are then exported by the SMB server as a single “file system”. An RFS file system is not locally mounted so it is not part of the HFS hierarchy. It can still be exported by the SMB server, even though it is not part of the HFS hierarchy. An RFS file system must be exported by the SMB server before a directory contained in it can be shared. Exporting is done on an RFS file system basis.

Sharing is done on a directory tree basis and allows PC clients to access data in an RFS file system. In order to allow a directory to be shared, the file system that the directory is contained in must be exported

Suppose we had the following OS/390 data sets on an OS/390 system:

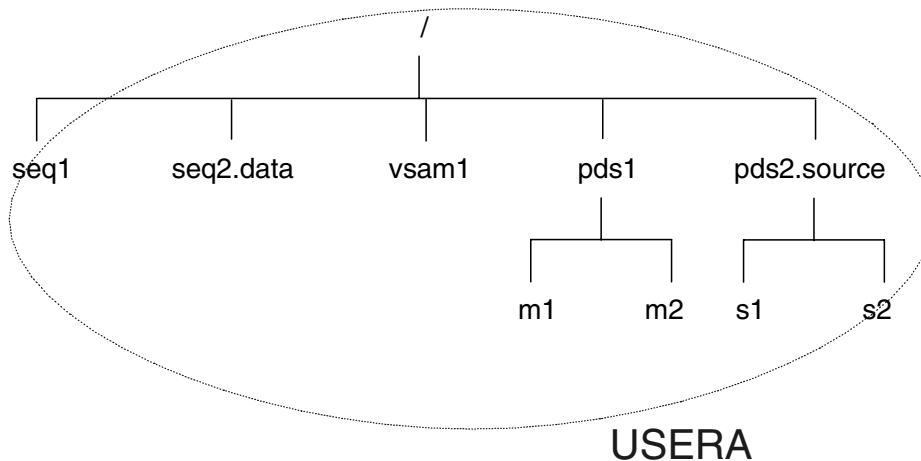
USERA.SEQ1
USERA.SEQ2.DATA
USERA.VSAM1
USERA.PDS1() with members M1 and M2
USERA.PDS2.SOURCE() with members S1 and S2

These data sets would be represented by the following RFS hierarchy:



This hierarchy is made up of OS/390 data sets that all begin with the same prefix (USERA). Notice that the RFS file names do not include the prefix. The files are all directly below the root of the file system. PDSs and PDSEs appear as directories with their members as files in the directory. All file and directory names appear in lower case. (This is controlled by a setting in the **rftab** file for this file system.)

The RFS file system is defined by the OS/390 data set name prefix. The RFS file system includes all OS/390 data sets that begin with that data set name prefix. See the following representation of this:



smbtab, dfstab, and devtab Entries for RFS

The files that the SMB server uses to relate the shared directory and its exported file system are the **smbtab**, the **dfstab**, and the **devtab**. (They are all located in `/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/`.) A common **minor device number** is used to tie related entries in these three files together. The **smbtab** is used to define the shared directory. The **dfstab** and the **devtab** are used to define the file system to be exported.

In **smbtab**, the minor device number is specified using the format `/dev/ufsn`, where *n* is a locally assigned unique minor device number that must refer to the file system data set where the root of the shared directory path name resides (that is the file system where the first `/` resides). This should always be the file system where the directory that you want to share resides.

In **dfstab**, the minor device number is specified using the format `/dev/ufsn` to identify the assigned unique identifiers for the file system.

In **devtab**, the minor device number is specified using the format `define_ufs n` to identify the data set name prefix for the RFS file system.

If the shared directory is `/`, then the **smbtab**, **dfstab**, and **devtab** entries might be:

```
smbtab:
/dev/ufs10 myrfsshare ufs "My rfs share description" r/w 100 /
dfstab:
/dev/ufs10 rfs10 ufs 110 0,,1730
devtab:
define_ufs 10
USERA
```

Creating a Shared Directory for RFS

This section describes the steps that are involved in creating a shared directory for RFS data. Refer to the *OS/390 DFSMS: Using Data Sets* book, SC26-7339, for information on how to create OS/390 data sets. (RFS file systems are not locally mounted in the HFS hierarchy.)

To create a shared directory, perform the following steps:

1. Choose a set of OS/390 data sets with a common data set name prefix that you want to share with PC clients (for example, **USERA**).
2. Choose the RFS directory that you want to share. Normally, it is `/`. `/` is a virtual directory that is the root of the RFS file system and contains all the data sets that begin with the common data set name prefix.
3. Add an entry to the **devtab** (`/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/devtab`) for this RFS file system. This entry maps a unique minor device number to the RFS file system you want to export and share. Choose a unique minor device number (for example, **10**) that is not in any other **define_ufs** statement and put it in the **define_ufs** statement for this RFS file system. Put the RFS file system data set name prefix (in this example, **USERA**) on the next line. An example entry for an RFS file system might look like the following:

```
* RFS devices
define_ufs 10
USERA
```


4. You must add a corresponding entry in **dfstab** (`/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/dfstab`) for this RFS file system. Use the same minor device number (in this example, **10**) in the device parameter (so in this example, it would be `/dev/ufs10`). Use a unique file system name (for example, **rfs10**), a file system type of `ufs` and a unique file system ID (for example, **110**). Finally, use a unique fileset ID (for example, **0,,1730**). An example **dfstab** entry might look like this:

```
/dev/ufs10 rfs10 ufs 110 0,,1730
```

Note: If you are using only SMB protocols (and not DCE DFS protocols⁵), you can use the same number for all the numeric values in a **dfstab** entry as long as the number is unique. For example, the **dfstab** entry might look like this:

```
/dev/ufs10 rfs10 ufs 10 0,,10
```

5. Add an entry in **smbtab** (`/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/smbtab`) for the directory you want to share (the directory you chose in step 2, above). Use the same minor device number (in this example, **10**) in the device parameter (so in this example, it would be `/dev/ufs10`). Choose a unique share name (for example, **myrfsshare**), a file system type of `ufs`, a description, share permission (for example, **r/w**), maximum users (for example, **100**) and the directory name (in this example, `/`). For example, the **smbtab** entry might look like this:

```
/dev/ufs10 myrfsshare ufs "My rfs share description" r/w 100 /
```

6. Issue the `dfsshare`

```
# dfsshare -share myrfsshare
```

At this point, a PC user can connect to this share.

Removing a Shared Directory for RFS

A shared directory may be made unavailable by issuing the **dfsshare** command with the **-detach** option. For example, if you want to stop the shared directory named **myrfsshare** from being available to PC clients, you would issue the following **dfsshare** command:

```
# dfsshare -share myrfsshare -detach
```

This command makes the shared directory unavailable until the OS/390 SMB server is restarted or the **dfsshare** command is issued to make it available. Since the shared directory is still in the **smbtab**, the shared directory would be made available again to PC clients. In order to make the shared directory permanently unavailable, it must be removed from the **smbtab** file.

Making a shared directory unavailable does not affect whether the underlying file systems are exported (that is, they remain exported). There may be other shares that apply to those underlying file systems. The **dfsexport** command may be used to unexport file systems.

File Data Translation for RFS

OS/390 Distributed File Service SMB support provides basic support for character data translation. Character data translation can be specified globally (that is, for all RFS file systems) or on a per RFS file system basis. Character data translation can be:

⁵ If you are using SMB and DCE DFS protocols, the file system ID must be assigned by the **fts crfldbentry** command. Refer to "Appendix C. Using Both SMB and DCE DFS" on page 151 for more information.

- Specified on an RFS file system basis (**devtab** *rfs_data_set_name_prefix* **text** or **binary** option),
- Specified in the attributes file (**rfstab**) on an RFS file system basis (**devtab** *rfs_data_set_name_prefix* **attrfile** option),
- Specified in a global attributes file (**rfstab**) (**_IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE** environment variable in the **dfskern** process),
- Specified globally (**_IOE_RFS_TRANSLATION** environment variable in the **dfskern** process).

The following sequence determines whether RFS file data is translated:

1. The RFS file system's **devtab** translation parameter (**text** or **binary**) is used to determine if translation is done.
2. If there is no translation parameter on the **devtab** for the RFS file system, then translation is controlled by the attributes file (**rfstab**) for the RFS file system's **text** or **binary** specification.
3. If there is no attributes file (**rfstab**) for the RFS file system, or if there is no **text** or **binary** specification in the **rfstab**, then translation is controlled by the global attributes file (**rfstab**). The global attributes file is specified in the **_IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE** environment variable of the **dfskern** process.
4. If there is no global attributes file (**rfstab**), then translation is controlled by the global translation specification for RFS file systems. The global translation specification for RFS file systems is specified in the **_IOE_RFS_TRANSLATION** environment variable of the **dfskern** process.

Translation is done using ISO8859-1 for network data and the local code page for the **dfskern** process is used for data in RFS.

When translation of RFS data occurs, the end of line character used when the OS/390 data set records are converted to byte stream data is controlled by the **attributes** file (**rfstab** **lf** or **crlf** entry) that is controlling the RFS file system.

You should use caution if you change a translation option from **binary** to **text** or from **text** to **binary**. If you have already stored data under one option (for example, **text**), and then you change the option (to, for example, **binary**), the data has been translated from ASCII to EBCDIC when it was stored in RFS, but is not translated back from EBCDIC to ASCII when it is read. This causes the data to appear garbled to the PC user.

Authorization for RFS

When a PC user attempts to access a directory or file, the normal OS/390 data set authorization mechanism is used. The PC user's SMB user ID is mapped to a local OS/390 user ID and that OS/390 user ID is used to determine if the user is authorized to the OS/390 data set. See "Chapter 6. Mapping SMB User IDs to OS/390 User IDs" on page 31 for information on how SMB users are mapped to OS/390 users. An OS/390 user ID's authorization to an OS/390 data set is determined by the local security subsystem (for example, RACF).

A PC user cannot directly change any attributes of an RFS file. Attempting to change an RFS file attribute using the **attrib** command or right clicking on the file from Windows Explorer and choosing Properties appears to be successful but is ignored by the SMB server.

When a PC user does not have authority to a PDS, the contents of the directory is not listed. The user is allowed to **cd** to the directory but when a **dir** is issued, access is denied or the contents of the directory

shows up as if it were empty. The user is not allowed to access files in that directory. When a PC user does not have update authority to a PDS, they are not able to create new members or delete or update existing members. When a PC user does not have read authority to an RFS file, they are not able to read the file. When a PC user does not have update authority to an RFS file, they are not able to change the contents of the file.

Free Space for RFS

The amount of free space that is reported for a drive letter that is mapped to a shared directory that resides in an RFS file system is a fabricated number. This is due to the fact that there really is no RFS file system, but only a set of OS/390 data sets with the same data set name prefix. The SMB server always reports a capacity of 122,880,000 bytes with half (61,440,000 bytes) available. Free space for RFS is actually controlled by various aspects of the system such as OS/390 DFSMS System Managed Storage, free space on a volume, primary and secondary allocations, etc.

Logon Considerations

In order for you to create a session and access OS/390 resources (files or printers) from a PC, the OS/390 SMB server must be able to identify you in terms of a local OS/390 user ID. **This session creation occurs on the first command or communication with the SMB server.** The SMB server can identify you either by authenticating you by a user ID and password that you supply, or if that fails, by allowing you to run unauthenticated with a guest OS/390 user identification. If both of these fail, your session is denied.

1. In order to authenticate you, the SMB server must receive an SMB user ID and password. The SMB user ID that is received is normally the user ID you specified when you logged on to your PC. You can, however, specify a user ID on a Windows NT/2000 **net use** command or the Windows NT Explorer Tools pull down, Map Network Drive selection, Connect As field. The SMB user ID that is received must be mapped to an OS/390 user ID. This mapping is accomplished through the **smbidmap** file. See “Chapter 6. Mapping SMB User IDs to OS/390 User IDs” on page 31 for information on the **smbidmap** file.

The password is either a clear text password or it is an encrypted password. The type of password expected by the SMB server depends on the setting of the **_IOE_SMB_CLEAR_PW** environment variable for the **DFSKERN** process.

- a. If **_IOE_SMB_CLEAR_PW** is set to **REQUIRED** (or it is unspecified), then the SMB server tells your PC to send a clear password for authentication. This password needs to be your OS/390 password. Normally, your PC sends the password that you specified when you logged on to your PC and therefore, it must match your OS/390 password.

Some levels of Windows does not send a clear password unless a Registry entry is added. See “Appendix B. Additional Information Using the SMB Server” on page 145 for more information on this topic.

If, however, you specify a password on a **net use** command, then that is sent to the SMB server and that password must match your OS/390 password. In this case, your PC logon password and your OS/390 password do not need to be the same.

On Windows NT/2000, if the password is not specified on **net use**, you may be prompted for a password (so Windows NT can obtain a clear text password) and that password is sent to the SMB server. Some commands do not prompt (for example, **net view**) and therefore fails to create a session. You should do a **net use** or Find Computer as the first communication in order to be prompted for the password and create a session.

- b. If `_IOE_SMB_CLEAR_PW` is set to **NOTALLOWED**, then the SMB server tells your PC to send an encrypted form of the password⁶. Your PC encrypts the password that you specified when you logged on to your PC. Because the SMB server needs to determine your actual SMB password for authentication, your PC logon password must be stored into your RACF DCE segment⁷ by using the OMVS **smbpw** command prior to creating a session with the SMB server. If you change your PC logon password, you must also change the SMB password in your RACF DCE segment.

If, however, you specify a password on a **net use** command, then that is used for authentication and must match the SMB password in your RACF DCE segment. In this case, your PC logon password and your SMB password do not need to be the same.

2. If authentication fails, then you may be allowed to run as a guest OS/390 user ID. This is determined by the `_IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT` environment variable for the **DFSKERN** process. If `_IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT` is set to a valid OS/390 user ID, then the SMB server allows you to run with this user ID. Otherwise, your session is denied.

RACF DCE Segments for SMB Encrypted Password Support

Note: This section assumes that you are using the IBM RACF support. For further information on using the RACF commands that are referenced in the following instructions, refer to the *OS/390 SecureWay Security Server RACF Command Language Reference*, SC28-1919. If you are using an equivalent security support product, refer to the appropriate documentation to perform the equivalent functions.

To allow the SMB server to use encrypted passwords, each OS/390 user (that a PC user is mapped to) must be set up for SMB encrypted password support. Setting up an OS/390 user for SMB encrypted password support requires defining a RACF DCE segment and storing the SMB password for the OS/390 user into the user's RACF DCE segment. The RACF commands are issued from TSO.

An outline of the steps required to set up the OS/390 system to have the SMB server use encrypted passwords processing is as follows:

- Activate class KEYSMSTR
`SETROPTS CLASSACT(KEYSMSTR)`
- Activate class DCEUIDS
`SETROPTS CLASSACT(DCEUIDS)`
- Define entry DCE.PASSWORD.KEY in class KEYSMSTR being sure to supply a 16 position KEYMASKED value

```
RDEFINE KEYSMSTR DCE.PASSWORD.KEY SSIGNON(KEYMASKED(nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn))
```

A complete example of this command is:

```
RDEFINE KEYSMSTR DCE.PASSWORD.KEY SSIGNON(KEYMASKED(0034639986ACCFDE))
```

- Define a RACF DCE segment for each **os390_user_id** that requires the SMB encrypted password capability using the command:

```
ALTUSER os390_user_id DCE
```

A complete example of this command is:

```
ALTUSER g1dfst2 DCE
```

⁶ The PC does not actually send an encrypted password over the network. An algorithm call "challenge/response authentication" is used that does not actually send any passwords over the network.

⁷ Using the RACF DCE segment does not imply that DCE needs to be active.

- You can display the RACF DCE segment for a user by using the command:

```
LISTUSER os390_user_id NORACF DCE
```

A complete example of this command is:

```
LISTUSER g1dfst2 NORACF DCE
```

- To allow PC users to connect to the SMB server once encrypted passwords have been enabled, each user must issue the following command from OMVS:

```
$ smbpw smb_login_password smb_login_password
```

where *smb_login_password* is the PC user's SMB password (specified twice).

- To enable the SMB server to use encrypted passwords, the **_IOE_SMB_CLEAR_PW dfskern** environment variable must be set to **_IOE_SMB_CLEAR_PW=NOTALLOWED** and the SMB server must be restarted.

Chapter 8. Sharing Printers

Before a PC client can print to an OS/390 Infoprint Server printer through the OS/390 SMB server, a shared printer must be created. A shared printer represents an OS/390 printer controlled by the OS/390 Infoprint Server. Once the PC client is connected to the shared printer, PC users can print to that OS/390 printer as though it were a local printer.

Creating a Shared Printer

This section describes the steps that are involved in creating a shared printer for an OS/390 Infoprint Server printer. The printer must be defined on the OS/390 system. Refer to the *OS/390 Infoprint Server Operation and Administration* book for information on how to define printers on OS/390. The SMB server can be running during this procedure.

To create a shared printer, perform the following steps:

1. Choose the Infoprint Server printer that you want to share. (For example, `printname1`.) You can determine the printer definitions that are available on the OS/390 system by using the OMVS `lpstat -p` command. Refer to the *OS/390 Infoprint Server User's Guide* for information on the `lpstat` command.
2. Add an entry in `smbtab` for the printer you want to share. Choose a unique minor device number (in this example, `1`) in the device parameter (so in this example, it would be `/dev/prt1`). Choose a unique share name (for example, `myprt`), a file system type of `prt`, a description, and put the printer definition name in the entry (for example, `printname1`). In addition, put the printer type information in the entry (for example, `"Generic / Text Only"`). You should choose a printer type that is compatible with the OS/390 printer that you chose in step 1 above. Refer to the *OS/390 Infoprint Server Operation and Administration* book for information on OS/390 printers and their supported printer types. The `dfstab` and `devtab` files do not apply to shared printers.

```
/dev/prt1 myprt prt "Department printer" printname1 "Generic / Text Only"
```

3. Issue the `dfsshare` command to cause the new shared printer to be made available to PC users if the SMB server is up.

```
# dfsshare -share myprt
```

If the SMB server is not running, then start the SMB server with the following OS/390 system command.

```
start dfs
```

At this point, a PC user can connect to this share or you can run the Windows Add Print Wizard to connect to the shared printer.

Removing a Shared Printer

A shared printer may be made unavailable by issuing the **dfsshare** command with the **-detach** option. For example, if you want to stop the shared printer, named **myprt**, from being available to PC clients, you would issue the following **dfsshare** command:

```
# dfsshare -share myprt -detach
```

This command makes the shared printer unavailable until the OS/390 SMB server is restarted or the **dfsshare** command is issued to make it available. Since the shared printer is still in the **smbtab**, the shared printer would be made available again to PC clients. In order to make the shared printer permanently unavailable, it must be removed from the **smbtab** file.

Print Data Translation

When a PC user prints a file, no data translation is done by the SMB server. Any data translation is provided by the OS/390 Infoprint Server. The OS/390 Infoprint Server provides data transforms (for example, PDF to AFP, PostScript to AFP, and PCL to AFP). It also provides conversion from one code page to another (such as, ASCII to EBCDIC). For print requests that come through the OS/390 SMB server, the OS/390 SMB server specifies ISO8859-1 in the **document-codepage** job attribute. For more information, refer to the *OS/390 Infoprint Server Operation and Administration* book.

Authorization

When a PC user prints a file, the PC user's SMB user ID is mapped to a local OS/390 user ID. The OS/390 user ID shows the owner of the print request on the SDSF view of the JES output queue. See "Chapter 6. Mapping SMB User IDs to OS/390 User IDs" on page 31 for information on how SMB users are mapped to OS/390 users. If you are displaying a printer queue from a PC, see "Chapter 11. Accessing Printers" on page 75.

Chapter 9. Locating the OS/390 SMB Server

The OS/390 SMB server allows PC clients to access OS/390 files and printers.

Selecting and configuring the PC client connection to the OS/390 SMB server allows you to ensure that network clients can use the server properly. Proper configuration allows all PC clients on the network to locate the server and use shared directories and printers.

PC clients may use the following methods of connecting to the SMB server on a TCP/IP network:

- User Datagram Protocol (UDP) Broadcast
- Domain Name Service (DNS)
- Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS)
- LMHOSTS static configuration files.

Setting up to Use the OS/390 SMB Server

This section discusses how you set up to use the OS/390 SMB server from the following clients:

- Windows 95 or Windows 98 (hereafter referred to as Windows 9x)
- Windows NT or Windows 2000
- Windows 3.11
- OS/2.

Setting up a PC client running Windows 9x, Windows NT, or Windows 2000 allows you to use the SMB server. You can sometimes use the Windows Network Neighborhood or you can use Find Computer to find the SMB server and to access shared resources from your Windows client. This allows you to easily access all shared objects on the SMB server from your PC client.

Note: If the OS/390 SMB server and your Windows client are in the same workgroup (domain) and the same subnet (network segment), then no additional setup on the client is necessary because the Windows client finds the OS/390 SMB server via UDP broadcast. If you are using DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) to assign client machine IP addresses, the steps to assign DNS addresses and WINS addresses on your clients may be unnecessary.

Windows 9x

When you set up your Windows 9x PC to use the SMB server, you must ensure that clients can locate the SMB server on the network. Network PC clients can use one of the following:

- Domain Name Service (DNS),
- Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS), or an
- LMHOSTS file to locate the SMB server.

DNS:

Configure your client using DNS by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.

2. Point to **Settings** and click the **Control Panel**.
3. Double-click the **Network Control Panel**.
4. Click the **Configuration** tab.
5. Click on **TCP/IP** protocol.
6. Click on **Properties**.
7. Click the **DNS Configuration** tab.
8. Make sure the **Enable DNS** button is marked. If it is not marked, click on the button.
9. Enter the **Host** and **Domain**.
10. Click the **Add** button in the **DNS Server Search Order** area to enter your **TCP/IP DNS Server**.
11. Click the **Add** button in the **Domain Suffix Search Order** area to enter your **TCP/IP Domain Suffix**.

Note: The previous information may already be supplied for you.

12. Click the **OK** button.
13. Click the **OK** button on the **Network Control Panel**.
14. Determine whether or not you want to restart your computer, click **Yes** or **No**.

WINS:

Configure your client using WINS by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**.
3. Double-click the **Network Control Panel**.
4. Click the **Configuration** tab.
5. Click on **TCP/IP** protocol.
6. Click on **Properties**.
7. Click the **WINS Configuration** tab.
8. Make sure the **Enable WINS Resolution** button is marked. If it is not marked, click on the button.
9. Enter the **WINS Server Search Order** IP Address.
10. Click the **OK** button.

11. Click the **OK** button on the **Network Control Panel**.

LMHOSTS File:

If you are using the LMHOSTS file, configure the LMHOSTS file with the IP address and the computer name of the OS/390 SMB server.

Windows NT

When you set up your Windows NT PC to use the SMB server, you must ensure that clients can locate the SMB server on the network. Network PC clients can use one of the following to locate the server:

- Domain Name Service (DNS)
- Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS)
- LMHOSTS file.

DNS:

Configure your client using DNS by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**.
3. Double-click the **Network**.
4. Click the **Protocols** tab.
5. Click on **TCP/IP Protocol**.
6. Click on **Properties**.
7. Click the **DNS** tab.
8. Enter the **Host Name** and **Domain**.
9. Click the **Add** button in the **DNS Service Search Order** area to enter your **TCP/IP DNS Server**.
10. Click the **Add** button in the **Domain Suffix Search Order** area to enter your **TCP/IP Domain Suffix**.

Note: The previous information may already be supplied for you.

11. Click the **OK** button.
12. Click the **OK** button on the Network panel.

WINS:

Configure your client using WINS by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.

2. Point to Settings and click **Control Panel**.
3. Double-click the **Network**.
4. Click the **Protocols** tab.
5. Click on **TCP/IP Protocol**.
6. Click on **Properties**.
7. Click the **WINS Address** tab.
8. Select the **Adapter** that applies to the OS/390 SMB File/Print Server.
9. Enter the **Primary WINS Server** and, if applicable, the **Secondary WINS Server** IP address in the **Windows Internet Name Services (WINS)** area.
10. Make sure the **Enable DNS for Windows Resolution** box is checked. If it is not checked, click on the box.
11. Click the **OK** button.
12. Click the **OK** (or **Close**) button on the Network panel.

If you are using the LMHOSTS file, configure the LMHOSTS file with the IP address and the computer name of the OS/390 SMB server.

LMHOSTS File:

Configure your client using the LMHOSTS file by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**.
3. Double-click the **Network**.
4. Click the **Protocols** tab.
5. Click on **Properties**.
6. Click the **WINS Address** tab.
7. Select the **Adapter** that applies to the OS/390 SMB File/Print Server.
8. Enter the **Primary WINS Server** and, if applicable, the **Secondary WINS Server** IP address in the **Windows Internet Name Services (WINS)** area.
9. Make sure the **Enable LMHOSTS Lookup** box is checked. If it is not checked, click on the box.
10. Click the **OK** button.

11. Click the **OK** (or **Close**) button on the Network panel.

Windows 2000

When you set up your Windows 2000 PC to use the SMB server, you must ensure that clients can locate the SMB server on the network. Network PC clients can use one of the following to locate the server:

- Domain Name Service (DNS)
- Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS)
- LMHOSTS file.

DNS:

Configure your client using DNS by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.
 2. Point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**.
 3. Double-click the **Network and Dial-up Connections**.
 4. Right-click the **Local Area Connections** icon and choose **Properties**.
 5. Click on **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)**.
 6. Click on **Properties**.
 7. Click the **Advanced** button.
 8. Click the **DNS** tab.
 9. Click the **Add** button in the **DNS Server Addresses: in order of use** area to enter the IP address(es) of one or more of your **TCP/IP DNS Servers**.
 10. Click the radio button for either **Append primary and connection specific DNS suffixes** or **Append these DNS suffixes (in order)** and click the **Add** button after entering one or more **TCP/IP Domain Suffixes**.
- Note:** The previous information may already be supplied for you.
11. Click the **OK** button.
 12. Click the **OK** button on the **General** tab of the **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties** window.
 13. Click the **OK** button of the **General** tab of the **Local Area Connection Properties** window.

WINS:

Configure your client using WINS by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Point to Settings and click **Control Panel**.

3. Double-click the **Network and Dial-up Connections**.
4. Right click the **Local Area Connections** icon and choose **Properties**.
5. Click on **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)**.
6. Click on **Properties**.
7. Click the **Advanced** button.
8. Click the **WINS** tab.
9. Enter one or more IP addresses of WINS server machines in the **WINS addresses: in order of use** area for each WINS IP address and click **Add** for each.
10. Make sure the **Enable NETBIOS over TCP/IP** button is selected. If it is not selected, click on the radio button.
11. Click the **OK** button.
12. Click **OK** on the **General** tab of the **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties** window.
13. Click **OK** on the **General** tab of the **Local Area Connection Properties** window.

If you are using the LMHOSTS file, configure the LMHOSTS file with the IP address and the computer name of the OS/390 SMB server.

LMHOSTS File:

Configure your client using the LMHOSTS file by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Point to **Settings** and click **Control Panel**.
3. Double-click the **Network and Dial-up Connections**.
4. Right click the **Local Area Connections** icon and choose **Properties**.
5. Click on **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)**.
6. Click on **Properties**.
7. Click the **Advanced** button.
8. Click the **WINS** tab.
9. Make sure the **Enable LMHOSTS Lookup** box is checked. If it is not checked, click on the box.
10. Click the **OK** button.
11. Click the **OK** button on the **General** tab of the **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties** window.

12. Click **OK** on the **General** tab of the **Local Area Connection Properties** window.

Windows 3.11 Client

You can use a Microsoft Windows 3.11 (Windows for Workgroups) PC client to access shared resources from the OS/390 SMB server. This allows you to access and use all SMB shared directories and printers with your Windows 3.11 PC client.

To set up your Windows 3.11 PC to use the OS/390 SMB server, perform the following steps:

1. Ensure that you have installed the Microsoft File and Print Client on your Windows 3.11 PC. See your operating system documentation for more information on the Microsoft File and Print Client.
2. Configure LMHOSTS with the IP address and computer name for the OS/390 SMB server.

Note: If you are not using the Microsoft File and Print Client, then you should refer to your Windows 3.11 documentation for more information.

OS/2 Client

You can use an IBM Operating System/2 (OS/2) Version 4.0 or higher PC client to access shared directories from the OS/390 SMB server. This allows you to access and use all SMB shared directories with your OS/2 PC client. The SMB server does not allow OS/2 users to connect to OS/390 shared printers.

To use the OS/390 SMB server with your OS/2 PC client, you must have the latest version of Multiple Protocol Transport Services (MPTS) installed. You must also properly configure TCPBEUI (NetBIOS protocol over TCP/IP) for OS/2 LAN Server or LAN Requester.

Finding the OS/390 SMB Server

This section discusses how to find the OS/390 SMB server and access resources from the following clients:

- Windows 9x or Windows NT
- Windows 2000
- Windows 3.11
- OS/2.

Windows 9x, Windows NT, or Windows 2000 Clients

You can sometimes use the Windows Network Neighborhood or you can use Find Computer to find the SMB server and access shared resources from your Windows client. This allows you to easily access all shared objects from your PC client.

Using Network Neighborhood:

If the SMB server and your PC client are in the same workgroup (domain) and in the same subnet (network segment), follow these steps using Network Neighborhood to find the server.

1. Click on the **Network Neighborhood**.
2. Select *OS390S1* (where *OS390S1* is the computer name of the OS/390 SMB server).

Using Find Computer:

For Windows 9x or Windows NT, you can use Find Computer to locate the SMB server on your network by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Point to **Find**, click **Computer**.
3. Enter the **Computer Name** for the OS/390 SMB server.
4. Click the **Find Now** button.
5. The screen shows the results of your search.

Using Search Computer:

For Windows 2000, you can use Search Computer to locate the SMB server on your network by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Select **Programs**.
3. Select **Accessories**.
4. Select **Windows Explorer** and release the button.
5. Click on the **Search** button on the status bar.
6. Click **Computers** in the **Search for other items** area.
7. Enter the **Computer Name** for the OS/390 SMB server.
8. Click the **Search Now** button.
9. The screen shows the results of your search.

Windows 3.11 Client

You can use a Microsoft Windows 3.11 (Windows for Workgroups) PC client to access shared resources on an OS/390 SMB server. This allows you to access and use all SMB server shared objects with your Windows 3.11 PC client.

To find the SMB server from your Windows 3.11 PC client, perform the following steps:

1. Open an **MS-DOS** window.
2. From a DOS prompt, enter the following command:

```
net view \\OS390S1
```

(where *OS390S1* is the computer name of the OS/390 SMB server).

OS/2 Client

You can use an IBM Operating System/2 (OS/2, Version 4.0 and later) PC client to access shared resources on an OS/390 SMB server.

To find the SMB server from your OS/2 PC client, perform the following steps:

1. Open an **OS/2** command window on your client.
2. From a command prompt, enter the following command:

```
net view \\OS390S1
```

(where *OS390S1* is the computer name of the OS/390 SMB server).

Chapter 10. Accessing Data

When your PC client has located the OS/390 SMB server, it can then access shared directories that have been created. This allows the PC client to read and write file data on the OS/390 system.

Using OS/390 SMB Server Shared Directories

This section discusses how you can access shared directories on the OS/390 SMB server from the following clients:

- Windows 95 or Windows 98 (hereafter referred to as Windows 9x)
- Windows NT or Windows 2000
- Windows 3.11.
- OS/2.

Note: If you are using clear text passwords for the SMB server (`_IOE_SMB_CLEAR_PW=REQUIRED`), you may need to update your Windows registry. See “Appendix B. Additional Information Using the SMB Server” on page 145.

Windows 9x or Windows NT

You can use a Microsoft Windows 9x or Windows NT PC client to access shared directories on the OS/390 SMB server by using one of the following methods:

- Map shared directories to logical drives
- Universal Naming Convention (UNC) mapping.

You may find it easier, however, to work with logical drive letters as opposed to UNC mapping.

Mapping Shared Directories to Logical Drives:

You can map an OS/390 SMB server shared directory to a logical drive by performing the following steps:

1. Click on the **Start** button.
2. Choose **Programs**.
3. Click on **Windows Explorer** (or **Windows NT Explorer**).
4. Click the **Tools** pull-down menu on the Windows Explorer and click **Map Network Drive**.
5. Choose the letter of a free drive for the shared directory (it may already be filled in).
6. Enter the **Path** name of an OS/390 SMB shared directory. For example, you enter the following:

```
\\OS390SI\myshare
```

where *OS390SI* is the computer name and *myshare* is the shared directory name.

7. Click the **OK** button.

However, if your OS/390 password (when using clear passwords) or your SMB password in your RACF DCE segment (when using encrypted passwords) is not the same as your Windows password, you should use the **net use** command with your OS/390 or SMB password from the command prompt. This avoids you being logged in as DFSDFLT (that is, a guest user). For example,

```
net use x: \\0S390S1\myshare mypassword
```

where *x* is an available drive letter, *0S390S1* is the computer name, *myshare* is the shared directory name, and *mypassword* is your password.

Universal Naming Convention (UNC) Mapping:

You can also use Universal Naming Convention (UNC) mapping to access OS/390 SMB server shared directories by performing the following steps:

1. Enter the following command:

```
net use \\0S390S1\myshare
```

where *0S390S1* is the computer name and *myshare* is the shared directory name.

2. Enter the following command to display the computer name and the shared directory.

```
net use
```

The following output appears:

Status	Local name	Remote name
OK		\\0S390S1\myshare

3. You can enter the following to delete the shared directory:

```
net use \\0S390S1\myshare /d
```

Windows 2000 Clients

You can use a Microsoft Windows 2000 PC client to access shared directories on the OS/390 SMB server by using one of the following methods:

- Map shared directories to logical drives
- Universal Naming Convention (UNC) mapping.

You may find it easier, however, to work with logical drive letters as opposed to UNC mapping.

Mapping Shared Directories to Logical Drives:

You can map an OS/390 SMB server shared directory to a logical drive by performing the following steps:

1. Click on the **Start** button.
2. Choose **Programs**.

3. Choose **Accessories**.
4. Click on **Windows Explorer**.
5. Click the **Tools** pull-down menu on the Windows Explorer and click **Map Network Drive**.
6. Choose the letter of a free drive for the shared directory (it may already be filled in).
7. Enter the **Path** name of an OS/390 SMB shared directory. For example, you enter the following:

```
\\OS390S1\myshare
```

where *OS390S1* is the computer name and *myshare* is the shared directory name.

8. Click the **Finish** button.

However, if your OS/390 password (when using clear passwords) or your SMB password in your RACF DCE segment (when using encrypted passwords) is not the same as your Windows password, you should use the **net use** command with your OS/390 or SMB password from the command prompt. This avoids you being logged in as DFSDFLT (that is, a guest user). For example,

```
net use x: \\OS390S1\myshare mypassword
```

where *x* is an available drive letter, *OS390S1* is the computer name, *myshare* is the shared directory name, and *mypassword* is your password.

Universal Naming Convention (UNC) Mapping:

You can also use Universal Naming Convention (UNC) mapping to access OS/390 SMB server shared directories by performing the following steps:

1. Enter the following command:

```
net use \\OS390S1\myshare
```

where *OS390S1* is the computer name and *myshare* is the shared directory name.

2. Enter the following command to display the computer name and the shared directory.

```
net use
```

The following output appears:

Status	Local name	Remote name
OK		\\OS390S1\myshare

3. You can enter the following to delete the shared directory:

```
net use \\OS390S1\myshare /d
```

Windows 3.11 Client

You can use a Microsoft Windows 3.11 (Windows for Workgroups) PC client to access shared directories on the OS/390 SMB server. You can either map shared directories to logical drives or use Universal Naming Convention (UNC) mapping. You may find it easier, however, to work with logical drive letters as opposed to UNC mapping.

To map an OS/390 SMB server shared directory to a logical drive on your Windows 3.11 PC client, follow these steps:

1. Open the Windows **File Manager**.
2. Click the **Disk** pull-down and select the **Connect Network Drive** menu item.
3. Specify the path for the shared directory in the path field. For example, you could enter

```
\\OS390SI\myshare
```

where *OS390SI* is the computer name and *myshare* is the shared directory name

4. Click the **OK** button.

OS/2 Client

You can use an IBM Operating System/2 (OS/2 Version 4.0 or later) PC client to access shared directories on the OS/390 SMB server. You should map shared directories to logical drives rather than using Universal Naming Convention (UNC) mapping.

To map an OS/390 SMB server shared directories to a logical drive on your OS/2 PC client, perform the following steps:

1. Open an **OS/2** command window.
2. From the command prompt, enter the following command:

```
net use x: \\OS390SI\myshare
```

where *x* is an available drive letter, *OS390SI* is the computer name, and *myshare* is a shared directory name.

However, if your OS/390 password (when using clear passwords) or your SMB password in your RACF DCE segment (when using encrypted passwords) is not the same as your OS/2 password, you should specify your OS/390 or SMB password on the **net use** command. This avoids you being logged in as DFSDFLT (that is, a guest user). For example,

```
net use x: \\OS390SI\myshare mypassword
```

where *x* is an available drive letter, *OS390SI* is the computer name, *myshare* is the shared directory name, and *mypassword* is your password.

Accessing HFS Data

This section discusses accessing HFS data.

HFS Directory and File Name Case Sensitivity Considerations

The OS/390 SMB server makes HFS file system data available to PC clients. The OS/390 HFS file system is case-sensitive. PC clients are case-insensitive (that is, they treat uppercase letters and lower case letters as the same when you are searching for a file).

The case of file names is significant in case-sensitive file systems and can consist of both upper-case and lower-case characters. For example, the HFS file system could have three files in it with the following names:

```
DFSSMB.DAT
DFsmb.dat
dfssmb.dat
```

These three files have technically different names (because the HFS file system is case-sensitive) and they represent three distinct, separate objects on OS/390.

All the PC clients that the OS/390 SMB server supports (Windows 3.11, Windows 9x, Windows NT, Windows 2000, and OS/2) are case-insensitive. This means that the case of file names is insignificant. For example, from the three example files that are listed above, all the PC clients that the OS/390 SMB server supports would recognize only the following file:

```
dfssmb.dat
```

The following algorithm is used by the OS/390 SMB server when searching for a file or directory name in HFS:

The name received over the network is folded to lowercase letters. Then the HFS directory is searched for that name. If found, that name is returned. If not, then the name received in the SMB (still folded to lowercase) is compared against each name in the HFS directory folded to lowercase letters. The first match found is returned. Otherwise, the name is not found.

Note that many PC clients may fold a name to uppercase letters before sending the name over the network.

When a new file or directory is created, the name received over the network is used as the name of the object. When a file or directory is renamed, the object is located as described above and then, if located, its name is replaced with the new name as received over the network.

HFS Symbolic Links

This section discusses how symbolic links are treated on the OS/390 SMB server. Refer to the *OS/390 UNIX System Services User Guide*, SC28-1891, for information on symbolic links.

A symbolic link is a special “file” that contains another path name. It can be created by UNIX System Services commands (for example, **ln -s old new**) and applications. It is used to redirect access to another file or directory in the file system hierarchy. The closest analogy to a symbolic link in Windows terminology

is a shortcut. However, they are not the same thing. A Windows application cannot create a symbolic link. However, if a symbolic link already exists, a Windows application can access it through the SMB server with some restrictions.

In general, symbolic links can be referenced by Windows applications if they are accessing them in a read-only manner. However, this access fails if the symbolic link contains one of the following:

- A path name that begins with / (that is, it is an absolute path name)
- Is circular (it traverses more than 50 symbolic links)
- A path to an object that does not exist
- A path to an object that goes out of the shared directory tree.

For the cases listed above, the path name displays as a file of zero length (for example, if listed with a **dir** command).

Other than these restrictions, symbolic links can be used during path name resolution. For example, if you **cd** to a path name that contains a symbolic link as part of the name resolution, this is successful (and follows the symbolic link) as long as none of the restrictions above apply and the user is authorized to all the components in the path name. Reading a file whose name is really a symbolic link that points to another file that exists is also successful. Note that, in general, a Windows user is not able to tell when the path name being used is a symbolic link or traverses one or more symbolic links.

Writing to a file whose path name is a symbolic link is allowed in some cases. If the file exists (that is, if the symbolic link and the linked file both exist), then opening the file for update, append, or truncate succeeds. An open for create fails (regardless of whether the linked file exists or not) because the symbolic link exists.

The symbolic link itself can be renamed if it remains in the same directory. Otherwise, it is denied. A symbolic link cannot be removed by a PC user.

Accessing RFS Data

This section discusses accessing RFS (Record File System) data.

RFS Directory and File Name Considerations

The OS/390 SMB server makes RFS data available to PC clients. The OS/390 data sets supported include sequential data sets (on DASD), partitioned data sets (PDS), partitioned data sets extended (PDSE) and Virtual Storage Access Method (VSAM) data sets.

OS/390 data set names are always upper case.

RFS has many restrictions due to the fact that RFS files are not really hierarchical, byte stream files. Since they are really OS/390 data sets that store record oriented data, they must follow OS/390 data set rules. Among the restrictions are the following:

- The data set name prefix plus the file name is limited to 44 characters. (Note that the data set name prefix is not included in file names displayed at the PC.)
- A data set name segment (characters between the dots) cannot be longer than 8 characters.

- The characters allowed in a data set name are more limited than file names in HFS (e.g, ~ is not allowed). See the *OS/390 DFSMS: Using Data Sets* book, SC26-7339, for more information of data set naming rules.
- Use lower case file names at the PC. OS/390 data set names are mapped to upper case and are displayed as lower case if **maplower** is specified in **rfstab** (this is the default). Mixed case file names should not be used.
- A PDS or PDSE cannot be created under another PDS or PDSE.
- PDS and PDSE member names are limited to 8 characters.
- Only one PDS member can be open for write at a time.
- PDS members cannot be moved between PDSs. Copy and erase must be used.
- PDS member aliases are not supported and are not displayed.
- If an attempt is made to write a record that exceeds the maximum record size, the write fails.
- Editors or commands (e.g., Wordpad or copy) that truncate the file to zero length before rewriting a file normally works. Editors or commands that try to replace without truncate to zero attempts to replace each record and this requires that each record be exactly the same size it was before. This is not likely and therefore the writes probably fail.

In general, data sets that contain variable length text data work correctly as far as record processing is concerned (although VSAM files do not support zero length records).

See “Appendix E. Using OS/390 Data Sets” on page 155 for more information on accessing RFS files.

Chapter 11. Accessing Printers

Once your PC client can locate the OS/390 SMB server, it can then access shared printers that have been created. This allows the PC client to print data on OS/390 printers. This chapter explains how to access the OS/390 SMB server shared printers and how to add a printer from the following clients:

- Windows 95 or Windows 98 (hereafter referred to as Windows 9x)
- Windows NT
- Windows 2000
- Windows 3.11.

Note: The SMB server does not allow OS/2 user's to connect to OS/390 shared printers.

You can map an OS/390 SMB server shared printer to a logical printer on the Windows PC clients by performing the following steps:

1. Open an **MS-DOS** window.
2. Enter the following command at the DOS prompt to get a list of OS/390 SMB server shared printers:

```
net view \\OS390S1
```

where *OS390S1* is the computer name of the OS/390 SMB server.

3. Choose a shared printer name from the list provided.
4. Enter the following command:

```
net use lpt2: \\OS390S1\myprt /persistent:yes
```

where *lpt2* is the name of the logical printer that you want to map the shared printer to, *OS390S1* is the computer name of the OS/390 SMB server, *myprt* is the name of the desired shared printer, and */persistent:yes* is an optional parameter specifying that the shared printer connection should be restarted by the client after reboot.

Accessing Shared Printers

This section shows you how to access shared printers using the Windows 9x, Windows NT, Windows 2000, and Windows 3.11 clients.

Windows 9x Client

You can access shared printers on the OS/390 SMB server using a Windows 9x client by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.

2. Point to **Find** and click on **Computer**.
3. In the Find: Computer dialog box, enter the **Computer Name** for the OS/390 SMB server.
4. Click the **Find Now** button.
5. Double-click on the found computer name.
6. Double-click on a shared printer.
7. If the printer you selected has been defined to the PC client, then you receive a list of jobs that are queued to print for that printer.
8. If the printer you selected has not been defined to the PC client, click **Yes** to set up the printer on your computer. If you are prompted further, select the appropriate printer characteristics to get the drivers set up.
9. Click the **OK** button.

Windows NT Client

You can access shared printers on the OS/390 SMB server using a Windows NT client by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Point to **Find** and click on **Computer**.
3. Enter the **Computer Name** for the OS/390 SMB server.
4. Click the **Find now** button.
5. Double-click on the found computer name.
6. Double-click on a shared printer.
7. If the printer you selected has been defined to the PC client, then you receive a list of jobs that are queued to print for that printer.
8. If the printer you selected has not been defined to the PC client, click **Yes** to set up the printer on your computer. If you are prompted further, select the appropriate printer characteristics to get the drivers set up.
9. Click the **OK** button.

Windows 2000 Client

You can access shared printers on the OS/390 SMB server using a Windows 2000 client by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Select **Programs**.
3. Select **Accessories**.
4. Select **Windows Explorer** and release the button.
5. Click on the **Search** button on the status bar.
6. Click **Computers** in the **Search for other items** area.
7. Enter the **Computer Name** of the OS/390 SMB server.
8. Click the **Search Now** button.
9. Double-click on the found computer name.
10. Double-click on a shared printer.
11. If the printer you selected has been defined to the PC client, then you receive a list of jobs that are queued to print for that printer.
12. If the printer you selected has not been defined to the PC client, click **Yes** to set up the printer on your computer. If you are prompted further, select the appropriate printer characteristics to get the drivers set up.
13. Click the **Finish** button.

Windows 3.11 Client

You can access shared printers on the OS/390 SMB server using a Windows 3.11 PC client by performing the following steps:

1. Open **Control Panel** in the Main program group.
2. Open **Printers**.
3. Click the **Add** button on the Printers window.
4. Select the appropriate printer from the **List of Printers** provided.
5. Click the **Install** button. You may need to provide the necessary printer driver with your Microsoft Windows 3.11 install diskettes.

6. Select the installed printer driver.
7. Click the **Connect** button.
8. Select the logical printer you mapped the shared printer to earlier (in this example, *lpt2*).
9. Click the **OK** button.
10. Click the **Close** button.

Adding a Printer

This section shows you how to add a printer using Windows 9x, Windows NT, and Windows 2000 clients.

Note: You may get prompted to specify a print driver if the **Printer type** specified on the **smbtab** entry for this shared printer does not exist on your PC.

Windows 9x Client

You can add a printer from a Microsoft Windows 9x client by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Point to **Settings** and click on **Printers**.
3. Double-click on **Add Printer**.
4. Click **Next** on the Add Printer Wizard panel.
5. Choose **Network printer** (if it is not already selected) and click the **Next** button.
6. Enter the **Network path** or **queue name** of the OS/390 SMB server shared printer. For example, you could enter the following network path:

```
\\0S390SI\myprt
```

where *0S390SI* is the computer name of the OS/390 SMB server and *myprt* is the name of the shared printer.

7. Decide whether or not you want to print from MS-DOS based programs by clicking **Yes** or **No**, then click the **Next** button.
8. Decide whether or not you want this printer as your default by clicking **Yes** or **No**, then click the **Next** button.
9. Click the **Finish** button.

Windows NT Client

You can add a printer from a Windows NT PC client by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Point to **Settings** and click on **Printers**.
3. Double-click on **Add Printer**.
4. Choose **Network printer server** (if it is not already selected) and click the **Next** button.
5. Enter the network path of the OS/390 SMB server shared printer. For example, you could enter the following network path:

```
\\0S390SI\myprt
```

where *0S390SI* is the computer name of the OS/390 SMB server and *myprt* is the name of the shared printer.

6. Decide whether or not you want this printer as your default by clicking **Yes** or **No**, then click the **Next** button.
7. Click the **Finish** button.

Windows 2000 Client

You can add a printer from a Windows 2000 PC client by performing the following steps:

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Printers**.
4. Click on **Add Printer**.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Choose the **Network Printer** radio button.
7. Select **Type the printer name, or click Next to browse for a printer**.
8. Choose **Network printer server** (if it is not already selected) radio button.
9. Enter the network path of the OS/390 SMB server shared printer and click the **Next** button. For example, you could enter the following network path:

```
\\0S390SI\myprt
```

where *OS390S1* is the computer name of the OS/390 SMB server and *myprt* is the name of the shared printer.

10. Install the driver, if necessary.
11. Click the **Finish** button.

Displaying a Printer Queue

Windows PC clients have the ability to display a printer queue. Perform the following steps to display a printer queue:

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Point to **Settings** and click **Printers**.
3. Determine which printer you want to display and double-click on it.

For print requests that come through the OS/390 SMB server, the OS/390 SMB server specifies the SMB user ID of the submitter in the **name-text** job attribute (refer to the *OS/390 Infoprint Server Operation and Administration* for more information on the **name-text** job attribute). When the printer is displayed, it shows one line for each print request for that printer that has not printed yet. When a print request contains a **name-text** job attribute, the following fields are displayed:

Document Name

The JES Jobname followed by the JES Jobid (as shown on the SDSF output queue panel). For a print request submitted through the OS/390 SMB server, the JES Jobname is the OS/390 user ID for the SMB user that submitted the print request. See “Chapter 6. Mapping SMB User IDs to OS/390 user IDs” on page 31 for information on how SMB user IDs are mapped. The JES Jobid is normally the characters PS followed by a number assigned by the Infoprint Server. Print jobs submitted by using the OS/390 SMB server always have JES Jobids less than 65536.

Owner

The **name-text** job attribute. For a print request submitted using the OS/390 SMB server, this is the SMB user ID of the submitter.

For print requests that do not have a **name-text** job attribute, the **Document Name** normally contains the filename of the print request and the **Owner** contains the OS/390 user ID of the submitter.

Note: It is best to avoid leaving a window for a remote printer open for long periods of time. While the remote printer window is open, the server is continually queried in order to update the window with the latest printer status. This may lead to unnecessary network contention.

Using PC Client Print Drivers with OS/390 SMB Server Shared Printers

The OS/390 SMB server acts as a print server that makes the services of the OS/390 Infoprint Server available to PC clients. This allows clients with the proper print drivers to submit print jobs to the OS/390 Infoprint Server through the OS/390 SMB server. The available print types include the following:

- Postscript
- PCL
- text
- Advanced Function Printing (AFP).

You can access print drivers for supported Windows PC clients in either of these two ways:

- If the printer type specified on the **smbtab** (for example, **Generic / Text Only**) is available on the Windows system, Windows automatically uses that printer type (and print driver) when the printer is added by the Add Print Wizard.
- Print drivers are available for free downloading from the IBM Printing Systems Company World Wide Web (WWW) site. It is located at <http://www.ibm.com/printers>.

Part 2. OS/390 SMB Support Reference

This part of the book discusses the reference information and is organized into the following chapters:

- “Chapter 12. OS/390 System Commands” on page 85
- “Chapter 13. Distributed File Service SMB Files” on page 93
- “Chapter 14. Distributed File Service SMB Commands” on page 121.

Each chapter begins with a short introduction and is followed by information about the processes, the files and the commands, which are ordered alphabetically.

In addition, there are the following appendices:

- “Appendix A. Environment Variables in SMB” on page 131
- “Appendix B. Additional Information Using the SMB Server” on page 145
- “Appendix C. Using Both SMB and DCE DFS” on page 151
- “Appendix D. Customizable Files” on page 153
- “Appendix E. Using OS/390 Data Sets” on page 155.

Chapter 12. OS/390 System Commands

This chapter introduces you to the following commands:

- **MODIFY**, an OS/390 system command which enables you to start, stop, and query the status of the SMB daemons.
- **START** and **STOP**, OS/390 system commands that enable you to start and stop the DFS Control Task (DFS).

These commands may be invoked from the operator console or from an OS/390 Spool Display and Search Facility (SDSF) screen.

modify dfs processes

Purpose

Starts, stops, or queries the status of DFS Control Task daemons. This command can also be used to send a command string to the **dfskern** daemon.

Format

You can use any of the following formats for this command.

modify *procname*,{**start** | **stop** | **query**} *daemon*

modify *procname*,**send** **dfskern**,**reload**,{**print** | **smbmap**}

Parameters

procname

The name of the DFS Control Task. On OS/390 DFS, the default *procname* is **dfs**.

command

The action that is performed on the DFS daemon or daemons. This parameter can have one of the following values:

start

Starts either a single DFS daemon or all the DFS daemons.

stop

Stops either a single DFS daemon or all the DFS daemons.

query

Displays the status and process identifier (PID) of the DFS daemon or DFS daemons.

send

Sends a command string to the **dfskern** daemon.

daemon

The name of the OS/390 DFS Control Task daemon for which the action is being requested. This parameter can have one of the following values:

dfskern

The **dfskern** daemon. The **dfskern** server daemon is the DFS File Exporter process.

The **dfskern** daemon parameter of the **send** command can be further modified through the following parameters:

reload,print

Causes the Infoprint Server DLL to be reloaded and reinitialized. Refer to the *OS/390 Program Directory* for more information on the OS/390 Infoprint Server DLL.

reload,smbmap

Ensures that new SMB identity mappings are used by first eliminating any cached SMB identity mappings and then reloading the updated **smbidmap** file.

export

The **export** daemon. The **export** server daemon allows exporting and sharing of HFS File Systems.

unexport

The **unexport** daemon. The **unexport** server daemon allows unexporting and unsharing of HFS File Systems.

all

All of the DFS daemons.

Usage

The **modify dfs daemon** command is used to manually start or stop one or more DFS daemons, or to view the status of the daemons. It is especially useful in situations where a daemon has stopped abnormally. On OS/390 DFS, the DFS daemons are contained in the **dfs** address space (with the possible exception of **dfskern**).

Starting and Stopping OS/390 DFS Daemons: Using the **MODIFY** system command, you can start or stop either a single daemon or all the daemons configured on the host.

Viewing the Status of OS/390 DFS Daemons: Using the **MODIFY** system command, you can view the status of the DFS daemons from the operator console using the query option.

Sending a Parameter to the dfskern Daemon: Using the **MODIFY** system command, you can send a parameter to the **dfskern** daemon.

The **reload,print** parameter causes the print DLL used by the SMB File/Print Server to communicate with the OS/390 Infoprint Server to be reloaded and reinitialized. Refer to the *OS/390 Program Directory* for more information on the OS/390 Infoprint Server DLL. This allows the OS/390 Infoprint Server to be enabled or updated without the need to restart **dfskern**. (You may need to update **smbtab** and you may need to issue the **dfsshare** command.) Print jobs in the process of being submitted may need to be resubmitted. An open window for an OS/390 remote printer may need to be refreshed.

The **reload,smbmap** parameter eliminates any cached identity mappings and reloads a new **smbidmap** file to update identity mappings between SMB user IDs and OS/390 user IDs. The new identity mappings take effect for new connections.

Privilege Required

This command is an OS/390 system command.

Examples

The following example starts the DFS **dfskern** process:

```
modify dfs,start dfskern
```

The following example starts all the DFS daemons:

```
modify dfs,start all
```

The following example views the status of all the DFS Control Task daemons that are currently active on the host.

```
modify dfs,query all
```

In the following example, the **dfskern** daemon is instructed to eliminate existing identity mappings and to reload an updated **smbidmap** file that includes recently added or deleted user identity mapping information:

```
modify dfs,send dfskern,reload,smbmap
```

Related Information

Files:

ioepdcf
smbidmap

start dfs

Purpose

Starts the DFS Control Task.

Format

```
start procname[,start_options]
```

Parameters

procname

The name of the DFS Control Task. On OS/390 DFS, the default *procname* is **DFS**.

start_options

The value passed to the **START** command. On OS/390 DFS, *start_options* has only one value, *parm='-nodfs'*. You can use the *parm='-nodfs'* option to start the DFS Control Task without starting the DFS Control Task daemons. (This is normally used during installation verification.)

Usage

The **START** command is used to initiate the DFS Control Task.

You can use the *parm='-nodfs'* option to start the DFS Control Task without starting the DFS Control Task daemons.

Note: In OS/390 DFS, *start_options* values **must** be enclosed in single quotes. This is because the OS/390 **START** command converts all user-supplied *start_options* values to uppercase characters unless they are enclosed in single quotes.

Privilege Required

This command is an OS/390 system command.

Examples

The following command starts the DFS Control Task and all daemons on OS/390 DFS:

```
start dfs
```

The following command starts the DFS Control Task without starting the DFS daemons:

```
start dfs,parm='-nodfs'
```

Related Information

File:

ioepdcf

stop dfs

Purpose

Stops the DFS Control Task processes and the DFS Control Task.

Format

stop *procname*

Parameters

procname

The name of the DFS Control Task. On OS/390 DFS, the default procname is **DFS**.

Usage

The **STOP** command stops the DFS Control Task (**dfscntl**) and the processes controlled by the **dfscntl** process. These processes are:

dfskern

The **dfskern** daemon. The **dfskern** server daemon is the SMB File Server process.

export

The **export** daemon. The **export** daemon allows exporting of HFS file systems.

Privilege Required

This command is an OS/390 system command.

Examples

The following command stops the DFS Control Task and all daemons on OS/390 DFS:

```
stop dfs
```

Related Information

File:

ioepdcf

Chapter 13. Distributed File Service SMB Files

This chapter introduces you to the Distributed File Service SMB files. These files contain configuration parameters for server processes and define HFS files and OS/390 Infoprint Server printers for sharing with Windows clients.

This chapter provides an alphabetical listing of all relevant SMB files.

Attributes File (rfstab)

Purpose

Contains tables describing the attributes used to manipulate RFS files in the SMB server. It also contains descriptions for:

- Data set creation attributes
- Processing attributes
- Site attributes.

The PC user can also modify data set creation attributes that provide information about an OS/390 data set to the SMB server, such as the type of data set, or how the data set is allocated (for example, blocks, cylinders, or tracks). Processing attributes and site attributes can only be modified by the system administrator.

Note: The attributes file is sometimes referred to as the **rfstab** file.

Specifying the Location of the Attributes File (rfstab): The attributes file is in either an HFS file, a fixed-block partitioned data set, or a fixed-block sequential data set with a record length of 80. The file's location is specified by the **_IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE** environment variable for the **dfskern** process. For example, **_IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE=/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/rfstab** is the default location.

The SMB server can use the same attributes file as the DFSMS/MVS® NFS server. For example, **_IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE=//NFSADMIN.NFSS(NFSSATT)**, would cause the SMB server to use the member NFSSATT in PDS NFSADMIN.NFSS for the RFS attributes. (The NFS server attributes file is specified in the NFSATTR DD statement of the NFS server startup procedure.) NFS server attributes that are not supported by the SMB server are ignored. See “Unsupported Attributes” on page 100 for a list of attributes that are not supported.

An attributes file can also be specified on an RFS file system basis. Its location can be specified in the **devtab** entry for the RFS file system on the same line as the data set prefix name: **attrfile attributes_file** (where *attributes_file* is the pathname of the attributes file that controls the data set creation, processing and site attributes for this RFS file system). An example **devtab** entry might look like this:

```
* RFS devices
define_ufs 10 rfs
USERA attrfile /opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/rfstab2
```

If no **attrfile** parameter is specified in the devtab entry for the RFS file system, the attributes are taken from the global attributes file specified in the **_IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE** environment variable in the **dfskern** process.

If no **_IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE** environment variable is specified, then the SMB server system defaults are used for RFS attributes.

Using Multipliers: Instead of entering numeric values for the attributes, you can use the multipliers K (1024), M (1024 x 1024), or G (1024 x 1024 x 1024) for specifying sizes. For example, **lrecl(8192)** is the same as **lrecl(8K)**.

Data Set Creation Attributes: The data set creation attributes are used to define the structure of OS/390 data sets when creating a file. These attributes correspond to the data control block (DCB) or the

job control language (JCL) parameters used to define an OS/390 data set when it is created. Refer to the *OS/390 MVS JCL Reference*, SC28-1757, for more detailed information about data set creation attributes.

The data set creation attributes are described in the following table. Defaults are underlined.

You can override these attributes by specifying an attributes file in the devtab entry for the RFS file system or by using a file creation command. For PDS and PDSE, members have the same attributes as the data set attributes, so the file creation attributes for members are ignored.

Table 1. Data Set Creation Attributes

Data Set Creation Attribute	Description
blks	Specifies that disk space (see the space attribute in this table) is allocated by blocks, except for VSAM data sets.
cyls	Specifies that disk space is allocated by cylinders.
recs	Specifies that disk space is allocated by records for VSAM data sets. blks and recs are identical for VSAM data sets.
trks	Specifies that disk space is allocated by tracks.
blksize (<u>0</u> <i>quan</i>)	Specifies the maximum length, in bytes, of a physical block on disk. <i>quan</i> is a number <u>0</u> (the default) to 32,760. If blksize (0) is specified, the system determines an optimal block size to use.
dataclas (<i>class_name</i>)	Specifies the data class associated with the file creation. The <i>class_name</i> must be defined to DFSMS/MVS before it can be used by the client. The system-managed storage automatic class selection routine must also assign a storage class to the file being created. For more information on data classes, refer to the <i>OS/390 DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Reference</i> , SC26-7331.
dir (<u>27</u> <i>quan</i>)	Specifies the number of 256-byte records needed in the directory of a PDS. Use it with the mkdir command when you are creating a PDS. <i>quan</i> is a number from 1 to 16,777,215 (the default is <u>27</u>). The maximum number of PDS members is 14,562.
dsntype (<i>library</i> pds)	Specifies whether a PDSE or a PDS is to be created when the mkdir client command is used. library is for PDSE. pds is for PDS. You cannot create a PDS (or PDSE) within another PDS (or PDSE). If you need help deciding whether to create a PDS or a PDSE, refer to the <i>OS/390 DFSMS: Using Data Sets</i> book, SC26-7339.
dsorg (<i>org</i>)	Specifies the organization of a data set. <i>org</i> can be a physical sequential (ps) data set, direct access (DA) data set, VSAM KSDS (indexed), VSAM RRDS (numbered) or VSAM ESDS (nonindexed). This attribute is ignored for directory-oriented client commands. If you are using VSAM data sets in binary mode, then nonindexed is recommended.
keys (<i>len,off</i>)	Specifies the length and offset of the keys for VSAM KSDS data sets. Keys can only be specified when using dsorg (indexed). <i>len</i> and <i>off</i> are specified in bytes. <i>len</i> is between 1 and 255 (the default is <u>64</u>). <i>off</i> is between 0 and 32,760 (the default is <u>0</u>). When you create a VSAM KSDS data set, the records you are loading into it must be keyed-sequenced or the write fails. Each write of the data set is treated like a first load, and requires that the records being loaded are in ascending key sequence.

Data Set Creation Attribute	Description
lrecl (8196 <i>quan</i>)	<p>Specifies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The length, in bytes, for fixed-length records. The maximum length, in bytes, for variable-length records. If the blksize attribute is specified, the value must be at least 4 bytes less than the blksize quantity. <p><i>quan</i> is a number from 1 to 32,760 (the default is 8196).</p>
mgmtclas (<i>mgmt_class_name</i>)	<p>Specifies the management class associated with the file creation. The <i>mgmt_class_name</i> must be defined to DFSMS/MVS before it can be used by the client. The system managed storage automatic class selection (ACS) routine must also assign a storage class to the file being created. For more information on management classes, refer to the <i>OS/390 DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Reference</i>, SC26-7331.</p>
model (<i>dsname</i>)	<p>The name of the cataloged VSAM data set from which to copy data set creation attributes when creating a new VSAM data set. <i>dsname</i> is a fully qualified MVS™ data set name without quotation marks.</p> <p>The model attribute must be used with one of the dsorg attributes which imply a VSAM organization. You can do this by specifying the dsorg attributed for a VSAM in the command. See the dsorg entry in this table.</p>
recfm (<i>cccc</i>)	<p>Specifies the format and characteristics of the records in the data set. <i>cccc</i> can be 1 to 4 characters, in one of the following combinations:</p> <p>f fb fs fbs u v vb vs vbs</p> <p>Valid record format characters:</p> <p><i>b</i> Blocked <i>f</i> Fixed-length records <i>s</i> Spanned for variable records, standard format for fixed records <i>u</i> Undefined-length records <i>v</i> Variable-length records</p> <p>In recfm, codes v, f, and u are mutually exclusive. The s code is not allowed for a PDS or PDSE.</p>
recordsize (<i>avg,max</i>)	<p>The average and maximum record size for VSAM data sets. <i>avg</i> and <i>max</i> are specified in bytes. They can each range from 1 to 32,760 (the defaults are 512 and 4096, respectively). These values must be equal for VSAM RRDS.</p>
rlse norlse	<p>Specifies that unused space should be released from the data set the first time a new data set is closed. For slow clients with long pauses between writes, the rlse attribute causes space to be released from the primary extent prematurely. Further writes cause secondary space to be allocated.</p> <p>Specifies that unused space should not be released from the data set.</p>

Data Set Creation Attribute	Description
shareoptions (<i>xreg,xsys</i>)	Specifies the cross-region and cross-system share options for a VSAM data set. <i>xreg</i> is a number from 1 to 4; <i>xsys</i> is either 3 or 4. The defaults are <u>1</u> and <u>3</u> , respectively.
spanned	This applies to VSAM data sets only. For spanned records of non-VSAM detests, see the entry for recfm in this table.
nonspanned	Specifies that VSAM KSDS or ESDS data sets can contain records that span control intervals (spanned records).
space (<i>prim[,aux]</i>)	Specifies that data sets do not have spanned records.
space (<i>prim[,aux]</i>)	Specifies the amount of primary and auxiliary space allocated for a new data set on a direct access volume. <i>prim</i> is the number (from 0 to 16,777,215) of primary tracks, cylinders, or data blocks in the data set. <i>aux</i> (optional) is the number (from 0 to 16,777,215) of additional tracks, cylinders, or blocks allocated if more space is needed. If this attribute is not specified, the default is used. The defaults are <u>100</u> and <u>10</u> , respectively.
storclas (<i>class_name</i>)	Specifies the storage class associated with the file creation. The <i>class_name</i> must be defined to the DFSMS/MVS before it can be used by the client. For more information on storage classes, refer to the <i>OS/390 DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Reference</i> , SC26-7331.
unit (<i>unit_name</i>)	Specifies the unit on which to create a data set. <i>unit_name</i> is a generic or symbolic name of a group of DASD devices. The <i>unit_name</i> must be specified as 3390 for extended format data sets. Note: You cannot create or access tape data sets on an OS/390 host using the SMB Server. You cannot create extended format data sets with the SMB Server, except by ACS routines.
vol (<i>volser</i>)	Specifies the name of the DASD volume to be used to store the created data set. vol is the keyword and <i>volser</i> represents the volume name. If a data set is to be system-managed, as is determined by the DFSMS/MVS automatic class selection (ACS) routines, you can omit this attribute.

Processing Attributes: Processing attributes are used to control how files are accessed by clients. The processing attributes are described in the following table. Defaults are underlined. The administrator can override the default processing attributes in the **devtab** entry for the fileset. The client user cannot override processing attributes.

Table 2. Processing Attributes

Processing Attribute	Description
<p>binary</p> <p>text</p>	<p>Indicates that the data is processed between the client and server using binary format and no data conversion occurs between ASCII and EBCDIC formats.</p> <p>Converts the contents in the data set between EBCDIC and ASCII formats. Use this format to share text between clients and OS/390 applications.</p> <p>In text mode, the following attributes apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • blankstrip and noblankstrip. See entry for blankstrip in this table. • End-of-line specifiers (lf, cr, lfcr, crlf, or noeol) are used to indicate the OS/390 logical record boundary. See the entry for lf in this table.
<p>blankstrip</p> <p>noblankstrip</p>	<p>With text mode, strips trailing blanks at the end of each record of a fixed-length text file when the file is read. Pads the end of each file or record with blanks when a text file is written.</p> <p>Does not strip trailing blanks at the end of fixed-length records when a fixed-length text file is read. Does not pad records when writing a text file. The file must be of the correct size or an I/O error is reported to the client.</p> <p>For information on the text mode, see the text option of devtab on page 103.</p>
<p>lf</p> <p>cr</p> <p>lfcr</p> <p>crlf</p> <p>noeol</p>	<p>With text mode, use one of the following end-of-line specifiers:</p> <p>Line Feed is the end-of-line terminator (standard AIX® or UNIX).</p> <p>Carriage Return is the end-of-line terminator.</p> <p>Line Feed followed by Carriage Return is the end-of-line terminator.</p> <p>Carriage Return followed by Line Feed is the end-of-line terminator (standard DOS).</p> <p>No end-of-line terminator.</p> <p>For information on the text mode, see the text option of devtab on page 103.</p>
<p>executebiton</p> <p>executebitoff</p>	<p>Turns on the execute bits in user, group, and other (as reported with the ls (list) AIX or UNIX command) for files. Use when storing executables or shell scripts on the OS/390 system.</p> <p>Turns off the execute bits in user, group, and other for the mount point's files.</p>

fastfilesize	Causes the SMB server to approximate the file size. For more information, refer to “Handling of the File Size Value” on page 168.
nofastfilesize	For Direct Access data sets (PDSs and PDSEs) and non-system managed data sets, this specifies to read the entire file or member to get the file size. Using this attribute might cause a noticeable delay when first accessing very large data sets. For more information, refer to “Using fastfilesize to Avoid Read-for-Size” on page 171.
mapleaddot	Turns on mapping of a single leading “.” from a client file name to a leading “\$” on OS/390. This option would normally be enabled for access by AIX and UNIX clients.
nomapleaddot	Turns off mapping of a single leading “.” from a client to a leading “\$” on OS/390.
maplower	Turns on mapping of lower case file names to upper case when accessing files on OS/390, and back when sending to the network. This option would normally be enabled for access by PC, AIX or UNIX clients.
nomaplower	Turns off mapping of lower case file names to upper case and back when using files on OS/390.
retrieve(nowait)	The SMB server uses DFSMSHsm to recall or delete migrated files. The action that the server takes against the migrated files depends on which of the retrieve or notretrieve attributes is active. When the retrieve(nowait) attribute is active, the server does not wait for the recall to finish, and immediately returns a “device not available” message. You can try accessing the file later when the recall has completed.
notretrieve	When the notretrieve attribute is active, the server does not recall the file, and can return “device not available” upon a lookup, an rdwr, or a create request for a file. For more information, refer to “Retrieve Attributes” on page 99.
setownerroot	Sets the user ID in a file’s attributes to <i>root</i> .
setownernobody	Sets the user ID in a files’ attributes to <i>nobody</i> .

Retrieve Attributes: The server deletes the migrated file upon a remove request for a file, regardless of whether the **retrieve** or the **notretrieve** attribute is active. Typically, a remove request is preceded by a lookup request. If the data set was migrated with DFSMS/MVS 1.2 or below, retrieve attribute causes a recall because lookup processing needs to open the data set and read for size. If the data set was migrated under DFSMS/MVS 1.3 and DFSMSHsm™ 1.3 or later, and is SMS managed, its attributes were saved on DASD; therefore it is not always necessary to recall the data set to read for size and the data set may be deleted without recall. If the **notretrieve** attribute is active, the lookup can return a “device not available” message. If the client code decides to ignore the error and go with the remove, the migrated file is then deleted.

The UNIX command **ls mvsusera** does not issue requests for individual files under the *mvsusera* directory. Migrated files under the *mvsusera* directory are displayed, but are not recalled. However, the UNIX command **ls -l mvsusera** issues lookup requests for individual files under the *mvsusera* directory.

Site Attributes: The site attributes are used to control SMB server resources. These attributes are described in the following table. Site attributes can be overridden in the **devtab** entry for the fileset.

Table 3. Site Attributes

Site Attribute	Description
bufhigh (<i>n</i>)	Specifies the maximum size (in bytes) of allocated buffers before buffer reclamation (see the percentsteal attribute in this table) is initiated. <i>n</i> is an integer from 1MB to 128MB (the default is 2MB). If the combined total specified in the bufhigh and logicalcache attributes is greater than the available storage in the extended private area (implied by the REGION parameter in your procedure) at startup, the server shuts down immediately. A higher number means more caching and potentially better read performance.
filetimeout (<i>n</i>)	Specifies the amount of time, in seconds, before a data set is closed and data is written to DASD. The minimum specification is 30. The default is 30 .
percentsteal (<i>n</i>)	Specifies the percent of the buffers reclaimed for use when the bufhigh (<i>n</i>) limit has been reached. A higher value means a reclaim operation is performed less often, but the cached data is significantly trimmed on each reclaim. This can result in poor read performance because readahead buffers might be stolen. Lower values result in more frequent reclaim operations, but the cached data normal water mark is higher, meaning possibly better performance by reading out of cached data. <i>n</i> is an integer from 1 to 99 (the default is 20).

Unsupported Attributes: The following NFS Server attributes are not supported by the SMB server and are ignored.

- **attrtimeout**
- **cachewindow**
- **logicalcache**
- **maxrdforszleft**
- **noattrtimeout**
- **noreadtimeout**
- **nowritetimeout**
- **readaheadmax**
- **readtimeout**
- **retrieve**
- **retrieve(wait)**
- **writetimeout**.

Examples

The following is an example of an attributes (**rfstab**) file:

```
blksize(6160)
dir(250)
dsntype(pds)
dsorg(ps)
keys(64,0)
lrecl(80)
```

```
recfm(fb)
recordsize(512,4K)
nonspanned
space(100,10),blks
blankstrip
lf
executebiton
nofastfilesize
filetimeout(30)
mapleaddot
maplower
noretrieve
setownerroot
bufhigh(2M)
percentsteal(20)
```

Note: An example attributes file can be found in `/opt/dfsglobal/examples`.

Implementation Specifics

The attributes file is in either an HFS file, a fixed-block partitioned data set, or a fixed-block sequential data set with a record length of 80. The file's location is specified by the `_IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE` environment variable for the `dfskern` process. For example, `_IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE=/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/rfstab` is the default location.

The SMB server can use the same attributes file as the DFSMS/MVS NFS server. For example, `_IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE=/'NFSADMIN.NFSS(NFSSATT)'`, would cause the SMB server to use the member `NFSSATT` in `PDS NFSADMIN.NFSS` for the RFS attributes. (The NFS server attributes file is specified in the `NFSATTR DD` statement of the NFS server startup procedure.) NFS server attributes that are not supported by the SMB server are ignored. See "Unsupported Attributes" on page 100 for a list of attributes that are not supported.

An attributes file can also be specified on an RFS file system basis. Its location can be specified in the `devtab` entry for the RFS file system on the same line as the data set prefix name: `attrfile attributes_file` (where `attributes_file` is the pathname of the attributes file that controls the data set creation, processing and site attributes for this RFS file system). An example `devtab` entry might look like this:

```
* RFS devices
define_ufs 10 rfs
USERA attrfile /opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/rfstab2
```

If no `attrfile` parameter is specified in the `devtab` entry for the RFS file system, the attributes are taken from the global attributes file specified in the `_IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE` environment variable in the `dfskern` process.

If no `_IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE` environment variable is specified, then the SMB server system defaults are used for RFS attributes.

Related Information

Commands:

dfsexport
dfsshare

Files:

devtab
dfstab
hfsattr
smbtab

devtab

Purpose

Stores identifying information for all HFS and RFS file systems to be exported (and shared). (Unless otherwise noted, HFS includes file systems of type HFS, TFS, and AUTOMNT.)

Format

The **devtab** file contains the following lines:

* comment

define_ufs *n* [**hfs** | **rfs**]

{*hfs-file-system-name* [**text** | **binary** | **auto**] |

rfs-data-set-prefix [**text** | **binary**] [**attrfile** *attributes-file*] |

rfs-data-set-name [**text** | **binary**] [**attrfile** *attributes-file*]}

Options

* comment

Specifies a comment line.

define_ufs *n* [**hfs** | **rfs**]

Defines an HFS file system or RFS file system, *n* specifies a minor device number which is a unique identifier that can be any number greater than zero. Specifying **hfs** (Hierarchical File System) or **rfs** (Record File System) determines the type of file system. **hfs** is the default.

Note: **hfs** includes file systems of type HFS, TFS, and AUTOMNT.

hfs-file-system-name

Identifies the file system name of the HFS, TFS, or AUTOMNT file system that you want exported.

Note: If you do not want the *hfs-file-system-name* to be folded to upper case, put the name in double quotes. For example, "tmp". This is usually appropriate for file systems of type TFS and AUTOMNT. It may be appropriate for HFS if the HFS file system was mounted with lowercase characters in the file system name (using an environment that does not fold the file system name to upper case, for example, ishell). To determine if a mounted file system's name includes lowercase characters, use the OMVS **df** command.

rfs-data-set-prefix

Identifies the prefix of the record data sets that you want exported.

rfs-data-set-name

Identifies the data set name of a Partitioned Data Set (PDS) or Partitioned Data Set Extended (PDSE) that you want exported.

attrfile *attributes-file*

Identifies the name of the attributes file (**rfstab**) to be used for this RFS file system.

text | binary

Specifies whether the data needs to be translated (**text**) or not (**binary**). The default is controlled by the **_IOE_HFS_TRANSLATION** environment variable setting in the **dfskern** process (for HFS file systems) and by the **_IOE_RFS_TRANSLATION** environment variable setting in the **dfskern** process (for RFS file systems).

auto

Specifies that the decision to translate HFS data is based on whether the first 255 bytes of the file are deemed to be valid characters.

Usage

The **devtab** file is used to define HFS file systems and RFS file systems to be exported. The **devtab** file resides in the directory named **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs**. HFS and RFS file systems must be exported in order to be accessible by PC users. The file system containing the shared directory is automatically exported when the **dfsshare** command is issued (assuming it has proper **dfstab**, **devtab**, and **smbtab** entries). HFS file systems below the shared directory must be explicitly exported by using the **dfsexport** command if they are being made available to PC users (unless you are using dynamic export).

The **devtab** file is an EBCDIC file that can be edited with a text editor. You must have write (**w**) and execute (**x**, sometimes called search) permissions on the **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs** directory to create the file. You must have write permission on the file to edit it.

To export an HFS or RFS file system, it must be defined to OS/390 SMB. It is defined by creating an entry in the **devtab** file. Entering **define_ufs n** in the **devtab** file defines the type of file system as **ufs**, an HFS file system, and maps a unique minor device number, *n*, to the HFS file system you want to export. You can also enter **define_ufs n rfs** to the **devtab**, where **rfs** indicates that the file system is an RFS file system. The minor device number is a unique identifier that can be any number greater than zero. This number becomes part of the name of the device name (in the **dfstab** entry). Each HFS or RFS file system being exported must have a unique device number defined. The file system name of the HFS file system or the OS/390 data set name prefix for RFS is entered in the **devtab** file on the next line after the device number definition. Before exporting an OS/390 HFS file system, the OS/390 HFS file system **must** be locally mounted. For information about allocating and mounting OS/390 HFS file systems, refer to the *OS/390 UNIX System Services Planning* book, SC28-1890. RFS file systems are not locally mounted.

You can also specify an optional character data translation parameter on the same line after the file system name of the HFS File System or the OS/390 data set name prefix of the RFS file system. The possible values for the translation control parameter are the following:

binary

Do not translate the data.

text

Translate the data with the default translation tables. The default for local data is the local code page for the **dfskern** process. The code page for network data is ISO 8859-1. Refer to “Examples” on page 100 for an example using the **text** parameter.

An additional translation control parameter value (**auto**) for HFS is available for HFS file systems and an additional translation configuration file (**hfsattr**) is available for HFS.

The additional translation control parameter value for HFS is:

auto

Determine whether to translate the data based on the contents of the data. The algorithm is as follows:

- Outgoing data (client read) - if the first 255 bytes of data are valid EBCDIC characters then translate to ASCII
- Incoming data (client write) - if the first 255 bytes of data are valid ASCII characters then translate to EBCDIC.

Valid characters include all printable characters and carriage return, line feed, and tab.

If the translation control parameter is omitted, the default is controlled by the `_IOE_HFS_TRANSLATION` environment variable setting in the **dfskern** process (for HFS file systems) and by the `_IOE_RFS_TRANSLATION` environment variable setting in the **dfskern** process (for RFS file systems).

In the case of an RFS file system, you can also optionally specify the name of an attributes file (**rfstab**) on the same line after the *rfs-data-set-prefix* or *rfs-data-set-name* by using the **attrfile** keyword. See “Attributes File (rfstab)” on page 94 for more information on the attributes file.

Examples

The following examples show **devtab** entries for HFS and RFS file systems. All entries beginning with an asterisk (*) are comment lines.

The following example shows a **devtab** entry for an HFS file system. The second line, **define_ufs 2**, defines the type of file system as **ufs**, an HFS file system. A unique minor device number of **2** is assigned. The line following the definition of the HFS file system minor device number, **omvs.user.abc**, identifies the name of the OS/390 HFS file system being exported and specifies a translation control parameter of **text**. A translation control parameter of **text** means data is translated. The HFS file system device name is **/dev/ufs2** with **2** representing the device's minor number.

```
* HFS devices
define_ufs 2
omvs.user.abc text
```

Examples of other file system types:

```
* TFS devices
define_ufs 4
"/dev" text
* AUTOMNT devices
define_ufs 5
"*AMD/home" text
```

The following example shows a **devtab** entry for an RFS file system. The second line, **define_ufs 3 rfs**, defines the type of file system as **ufs** and the **rfs** parameter qualifies it as an RFS file system. A unique minor device number of **3** is assigned. The next line, **USERA**, is the prefix of the record data sets that you want to export as a single RFS file system. The RFS file system device name is **/dev/ufs3** with **3** representing the device's minor number.

```
* RFS devices
define_ufs 3 rfs
USERA text
```

Note: An example **devtab** file can be found in **/opt/dfsglobal/examples**.

In summary, the **define_ufs 2** entry in the **devtab** corresponds to the **/dev/ufs2** entry in the **dfstab** and **smbtab**. The **define_ufs 3 rfs** entry in the **devtab** corresponds to the **/dev/ufs3** entry in the **dfstab** and **smbtab**.

Implementation Specifics

The **devtab** file is stored as an EBCDIC file in HFS.

Related Information

Commands:

dfsexport
dfsshare

Files:

dfstab
hfsattr
rfstab
smbtab

dfstab

Purpose

Specifies HFS and RFS file systems that can be exported.

Usage

The **dfstab** file includes information about each file system that can be exported from the local disk and then shared with SMB clients. The file is read by the **dfsexport** command, which exports specified HFS and RFS file systems. (It is also read by the **dfsshare** command, which initializes SMB shares.) The **dfstab** file must reside in the directory named **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs**. The **dfsexport** command looks in that directory for the file; if the file is not there, no file systems can be exported.

The **dfstab** file is an EBCDIC file that can be edited with a text editor. You must have write (**w**) and execute (**x**, sometimes called search) permissions on the **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs** directory to create the file. You must have write permission on the file to edit it.

The file contains a one-line entry for each HFS or RFS File System available for exporting and sharing. Each entry in the file must appear on its own line.

The fields in the following list must appear for each entry; they must appear in the order listed, and each field must be separated by at least one space or tab.

Device name

The device name of the HFS or RFS file system being exported; for example, **/dev/ufs2**.

File System name

The name associated with the HFS or RFS file system being exported. A file system name can contain any characters, but it can be no longer than 31 characters. It must be different from any other file system name in the **dfstab** file. File system names cannot be abbreviated, so you should choose a short, descriptive name; for example, **hfs2**.

File System type

The identifier for the type of file system. For HFS and RFS file systems, it must be **ufs**. Enter the identifier in all lowercase letters.

File System ID

A positive integer different from any other file system ID in the **dfstab** file.

Fileset ID

The unique fileset ID number associated with the HFS or RFS fileset. Fileset ID numbers are represented as two positive integers separated by a pair of commas. For example, the fileset ID number of the first fileset is **0,,1**. When specifying a new fileset, increment the fileset ID. When the integer after the commas becomes greater than 2³², the integer before the commas becomes 1 and the integer after the commas returns to 0 (zero) (that is, **1,,0**). This number must be different from any other fileset ID in the **dfstab**.

Note: The file system parameters are referred to as aggregate parameters in the *OS/390 Distributed File Service DFS Administration Guide and Reference*. If DCE DFS protocols are used along with the SMB protocols, the Fileset ID parameter must be assigned by the **filserver** and stored in the FLDB (Fileset

Location Data Base) by using the **fts crfldbentry** command (see “Appendix C. Using Both SMB and DCE DFS” on page 151 for information on using the SMB protocol with the DCE DFS protocol). If DCE DFS protocols are not being used, the Fileset ID needs only to be unique from other Fileset IDs.

When the **dfsexport** command is executed, it reads the **dfstab** file to verify that each HFS and RFS file system being exported is listed in the file. A file system must have an entry in the **dfstab** file if it is being exported unless you are using dynamic export. To ensure that it does not export a file system that is currently exported, the **dfsexport** command refers to a list (in memory) of all currently exported file systems.

Examples

The following **dfstab** file specifies that an HFS File System and an RFS File System (**/dev/ufs2** and **/dev/ufs3**) can be exported:

```
/dev/ufs2  hfs2  ufs  101  0,,1715
/dev/ufs3  rfs3  ufs  102  0,,1718
```

There is nothing in a **dfstab** entry that distinguishes between an HFS file system and an RFS file system. It is the corresponding entry in the **devtab** (**define_ufs 3 rfs**) that indicates to the SMB server that the file system is an RFS file system.

Note: You can put comments in the **dfstab** file. Comments have a **#** in column 1. An example **dfstab** file can be found in **/opt/dfsglobal/examples**.

Implementation Specifics

The **dfstab** file is stored as an EBCDIC file in HFS.

Related Information

Commands:

dfsexport
dfsshare

Files:

devtab
smbtab

envar

Purpose

Specifies the environment variables for a process.

Usage

The **envar** file contains the environment variables for each OS/390 Distributed File Service process. There is one **envar** file for each process. Each **envar** file is located in the corresponding home directory of each process. (For example, the environment variables for the **dfskern** process are contained in the **/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envar** file.) See “Chapter 3. Post Installation Processing” on page 13 for information on process home directories. The **envar** file is read during process initialization and each environment variable specified in the **envar** file is set for the process. Environment variables are specified in the **envar** file in the following format:

variable-name=value

There should be no space between the *variable-name* or the *value* and the equal sign that separates them.

An environment variable:

- cannot be longer than 4096 characters
- must have an =
- can be continued by terminating the line with \

A line that begins with # is treated as a comment.

The **envar** file is an EBCDIC file that can be edited with a text editor. You must have write and execute permissions on the process home directory to create the file. You must have write permission on the file to edit it. See “Appendix A. Environment Variables in SMB” on page 131 for information on all the environment variables supported for SMB processing.

Examples

The following **envar** file entry (located in the **/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envar**) specifies that SMB processing should be on:

```
_IOE_PROTOCOL_SMB=ON
```

Note: Example **envar** files can be found in **/opt/dfsglobal/examples**.

Implementation Specifics

The **envar** file is stored as an EBCDIC file in HFS.

hfsattr

Purpose

Contains directives that map a file name extension (suffix) to an indication whether the OS/390 SMB File Server (**dfskern**) should translate the file data from ASCII to EBCDIC and vice versa (encoding).

Usage

The **hfsattr** file is a text file that is stored in HFS. The File Server locates the **hfsattr** file during startup (or restart) by examining the **_IOE_HFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE** environment variable for the **dfskern** process. The **hfsattr** file has the following format:

AddType *.suffix representation encoding [quality]*

The **hfsattr** AddType directive has the same format as the WebSphere Application Server uses in its configuration file (httpd.conf). You can point the File Server to this file. All other directives are ignored. The File Server only examines the first, second, and fourth fields. The others are ignored. Comments can be created by using the # character. All fields are case sensitive.

AddType

A keyword that indicates a directive to map a suffix to an encoding.

.suffix

The file name suffix. Wildcard characters are not allowed.

representation

The MIME type and subtype you want to bind to files that match the corresponding suffix. This field is ignored by DFS.

encoding

The type of data the file contains. The only value that the File Server looks for is **ebcdic**. This means that incoming data should be translated from ASCII (ISO 8859-1) to EBCDIC (IBM-1047 or the current codepage for the **dfskern** process). Outgoing data should be translated from EBCDIC to ASCII. All other values for encoding are ignored and the data is not translated. Before data is translated, it is checked for valid characters to avoid translating data that is already in the correct format.

quality

This is an optional indicator of the relative importance (on a scale of 0.0 to 1.0) for the content type. This field is ignored by DFS.

If the file name suffix is not found in the **hfsattr** file, or the file name has no suffix, then translation is determined by the **devtab** translation control parameter or the **dfskern _IOE_HFS_TRANSLATION** environment variable. For more information on **devtab** see “devtab” on page 103, and for the **_IOE_HFS_TRANSLATION** environment variable, see “Appendix A. Environment Variables in SMB” on page 131.

Examples

The following is an example of an **hfsattr** file:

```
# Map suffixes to the encoding
AddType .bin application/octet-stream binary 1.0
AddType .ps application/postscript ebcdic 0.8 # PostScript
AddType .PS application/postscript ebcdic 0.8 # PostScript
AddType .c text/plain ebcdic 0.5 # C source
AddType .html text/html ebcdic 1.0 # HTML
AddType .htm text/html ebcdic 1.0 # HTML on PCs
AddType .gif image/gif binary 1.0 # GIF
```

Implementation Specifics

The **hfsattr** file is stored as an EBCDIC file in HFS.

Related Information

File:

devtab

ioepdcf

Purpose

Specifies the processes to be started by the DFS Control Task.

Usage

The **ioepdcf** file, also referred to as the Daemon Configuration File, is an EBCDIC text file used by the DFS Control Task to determine which daemons can be started during the initialization of DFS. The file is located in the **/opt/dfslocal/etc** directory. The information contained in the **ioepdcf** file includes the following:

Process Name

The name of the process to be entered in the **ioepdcf** file. Valid processes associated with SMB are:

dfskern

The **dfskern** daemon. The **dfskern** server daemon is the SMB File/Print Server process.

export

The **export** daemon. The **export** server daemon allows exporting of HFS file systems.

Configuration Type

The configuration type for each server. Available types for OS/390 are:

CONFIGURED=Y

Specifies that the process starts during initialization. If the process abends or fails for any reason, it is automatically restarted by the DFS Control Task.

Note: Do not use this configuration type for the **export** process. This process executes once and then stops. The **export** process must not be automatically restarted once it has run. Use **CONFIGURED=I** or **CONFIGURED=M**.

CONFIGURED=N

Specifies that the process is not started by the DFS Control Task nor can the process be started manually.

CONFIGURED=I

Specifies that the process is started during initialization or when the **MODIFY** command, **START ALL** is issued. The process may be started manually. The process does not restart if it abends or ends for any reason.

CONFIGURED=M

The process is not started by the DFS Control Task but may be manually started by using the OS/390 system command **MODIFY**. The specified process does not restart if it ends for any reason.

Load Module Name

The name of the load module (**LMD**) in a partitioned data set. The load module refers to the name of the member in the **xxx.SIOELMOD** (where **xxx** is installation dependent) data set created during installation (for further information, refer to the *OS/390 Program Directory*).

The following are the PDS member names for the processes started by the DFS Control Task:

dfskern

The **dfskern** daemon load module name. The name, **dfskern**, is an alias for the load library entry, **IOEDFSKN**.

In addition, the **export** process is started by the DFS Control Task and executes the load library entry, **IOEDFSXP**. The **export** process has no alias.

Special Parameters

Parameters that are passed to the load module when a daemon is started (including LanguageEnvironment/370 (LE/370) runtime options). This is also called the argument list. Any runtime overrides such as storage specifications and redirection of output may also be added. The first argument is the home directory for each process. The home directory points the process to the directory holding the environment variable (**envar**) file for the process. Program parameters for the DFS process are preceded with a slash, /, in the argument list.

The **ioepdcf** file can be used to override the default parameter options for the following daemons:

dfskern

The **dfskern** server daemon is the SMB File/Print Server. There are no options that need to be overridden for this process for SMB File/Print serving.

export

The **export** daemon allows exporting of HFS file systems. See “dfsexport” on page 122 for information on options available for this process.

Additional special parameters that control restart and timeout intervals may also be entered in the **ioepdcf** file. These parameters are:

Restart

The interval defined for the DFS Control Task to attempt a restart of the process. Restart values are entered in seconds.

Timeout

The maximum interval that the Control Task waits for the process to complete initialization. Timeout values are entered in seconds. If this interval is exceeded with no confirmation of successful completion received by the Control Task, the status of the process is set to **UNKNOWN**.

Examples

The following example is an **ioepdcf** file entry for the **dfskern** process. The configuration type is **Y**, specifying that the process start during DFS initialization. The load module, **LMD**, is identified as **IOEDFSKN**. In the argument list, **ARG**, **ENVAR** indicates the environment variables to be used. In the example, the home directory is identified as **_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern**. An LE/370 runtime option is specified: **RPSTG(OFF)**. Parameters for the **dfskern** process follow the /. The > symbol is a redirection character which indicates that the output is redirected to the DD name that follows. In this example, the redirection of the **STDERR** to **STDOUT** of the process (**dfskern**) is specified by: **>DD:dfskern 2>&1**. **RESTART** and **TIMEOUT** values are both set at 300 seconds.

```
dfskern CONFIGURED=Y LMD=IOEDFSKN ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern'),RPSTG(OFF)/-mainprocs 7 -admingroup subsys/dce/dfs-admin >DD:dfskern 2>&1" RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
```

Note: The previous example should be entered on one line even though multiple lines are used in this example.

Implementation Specifics

The `ioepdcf` file is stored as an EBCDIC file in HFS.

This file is optional. If it does not exist, the following default values are used:

```
DFSKERN CONFIGURED=Y LMD=DFSKERN ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern')/-admingroup
subsys/dce/dfs-admin>DD:DFSKERN2>&1" RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
EXPORT CONFIGURED=I LMD=IOEDFSXP ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/dfsexport')/-all -verbose >DD:EXPORT
2>&1" RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
UNEXPORT CONFIGURED=M LMD=IOEDFSXP ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/dfsexport')/-detach -all -ver
>DD:UNEXPORT2>&1" RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BOSERVER CONFIGURED=M LMD=BOSERVER ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/boserver')/ >DD:BOSERVER 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC01 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC01 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc01')/ -tcid 0 >DD:BUTC01 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC02 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC02 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc02')/ -tcid 1 >DD:BUTC02 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC03 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC03 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc03')/ -tcid 2 >DD:BUTC03 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC04 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC04 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc04')/ -tcid 3 >DD:BUTC04 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC05 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC05 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc05')/ -tcid 4 >DD:BUTC05 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC06 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC06 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc06')/ -tcid 5 >DD:BUTC06 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC07 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC07 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc07')/ -tcid 6 >DD:BUTC07 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
BUTC08 CONFIGURED=M LMD=BUTC08 ARG="ENVAR('_EUV_HOME=/opt/dfslocal/home/butc08')/ -tcid 7 >DD:BUTC08 2>&1"
RESTART=300 TIMEOUT=300
```

rfstab

Purpose

See “Attributes File (rfstab)” on page 94.

smbidmap

Purpose

Maps an SMB user ID to an OS/390 user ID. The mapping is used to determine the SMB user's corresponding OS/390 user ID. This determines access permissions for shared HFS and RFS directories and files and owners for print requests sent to shared printers. If no **smbidmap** file is specified or it does not exist, then the SMB user ID is mapped to the default user ID (specified in the **_IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT** environment variable of **dfskern**). If no default user ID is specified, the request is denied.

Usage

The **smbidmap** file is a text file that the administrator creates and maintains. This must be created as an HFS file. The location of this file is specified in the **_IOE_SMB_IDMAP** environment variable of **dfskern**.

The **smbidmap** file contains one or more identity mapping declarations and has the following general format:

```
SMB-user-ID1  
OS/390-user-ID1  
...
```

This format illustrates an SMB user ID mapping entry. Each entry has two elements: SMB user ID and OS/390 user ID. A blank line is required between entries. The following explains each element in an SMB user ID mapping entry:

SMB-user-ID or *Domain/SMB-user-ID* or *Workgroup/SMB-user-ID*

Is the client's SMB identity. This may either be a simple SMB user ID (when you do not care what the domain of the SMB user ID is) or a fully qualified name (for clients within and outside the domain/workgroup). The SMB user ID can be up to 20 characters in length. A Domain/Workgroup name can be up to 15 characters in length.

- *SMB-user-ID* is assumed to be in any domain.
- *Domain/SMB-user-ID* is assumed to be in the specified domain.
- *Workgroup/SMB-user-ID* is assumed to be in the specified workgroup.

OS/390-user-ID

Is the OS/390 user ID of the client. All potential SMB clients must have OS/390 user IDs on the system where the DFS server is running.

Another entry that is allowed in **smbidmap** is:

```
*  
=
```

This means that if no OS/390 user ID can be determined, the SMB user ID should be used as the OS/390 user ID. This only occurs if the SMB user ID is eight characters or less. This entry can be the only entry in the **smbidmap** file, if desired.

Each SMB user can only have one mapping to an OS/390 user ID. However, different SMB users can be mapped to the same OS/390 user ID, if desired.

Examples

In the following example, the SMB user ID **smith** in **domain1** is mapped to the OS/390 user ID **CMSMITH** and SMB user ID **jones** (in any domain) is mapped to the OS/390 user ID **TSJONES**.

```
domain1/smith  
CMSMITH
```

```
jones  
TSJONES
```

Implementation Specifics

The **smbidmap** file is stored as an EBCDIC file in HFS

smbtab

Purpose

Specifies HFS and RFS shared directories and shared printers being made available to PC clients.

Usage

The **smbtab** file includes information about each shared directory and each shared printer that can be made available to PC clients. It resides in the directory **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs**.

The file contains a one-line entry for each shared directory or shared printer. Each entry in the file must appear on its own line.

The shared directory fields in the following list must appear for each entry; they must appear in the order listed, and each field must be separated by at least one space or tab.

Device name

For shared directories, the device name of the HFS or RFS file system that contains the root of the directory path name being shared; for example, **/dev/ufs2**. This must match the device name of the file system in the **dfstab**.

Share name

The name to be associated with the HFS or RFS directory being shared. A share name can contain numbers (0-9), letters (A-Z) and the following special characters \$ % ' - _ @ ~ ! () ^ # &. To ensure that a client can connect to an OS/390 SMB share, you should limit yourself to these characters. A share name can be up to 12 characters.

Note: A share name that is longer than 8 characters cannot be connected to by Windows 3.11 (Windows for Workgroups) clients.

Device type

The device type identifier for the type of device housing the share. For HFS and RFS directories this must be **ufs**. Enter the identifier in all lowercase letters.

Share description

The text description of the share. It can be up to 40 characters and is surrounded by double quotes; for example, "**Department HFS files**".

Shared directories permissions

For shared directories, specifies whether the share is limited to read-only access or whether read-write access is allowed. Read-only access is specified as **r/o**. Read-write access is specified as **r/w**.

In addition, permissions used during a create of a file or directory can be specified. They are specified directly after **r/w**. For example, you might specify **r/w,f=700,d=755**. These permissions override the global create permissions (**_IOE_SMB_DIR_PERMS** and **_IOE_SMB_FILE_PERMS** environment variables in **dfskern**) for this shared directory. Create permissions cannot be specified for **r/o** access.

Maximum users

For shared directories, the maximum number of users that can be connected to a share name. It can be a number between 0 and 4294967295. 0 means that there is no limit to the number of users.

Directory path name

For shared directories, specifies the path name of the HFS or RFS directory (relative to the root of the file system referred to by the **Device name**) that this share represents. For HFS, the directory must reside in a locally mounted HFS file system. For RFS, the directory must be the root of the RFS file system (/) or a directory (that is, PDS or PDSE) within the RFS file system. The file system must be exported (see “dfstab” on page 107). The directory path name can be up to 1024 characters. It must be surrounded by double quotes if it contains embedded blanks. For HFS, you may want to export HFS file systems below this directory in order to allow all path names below this directory to be accessible by this share or you may want to use dynamic export. See “Dynamic Export for HFS” on page 40 for information on using the dynamic export capability of the SMB server.

If you are using dynamic export, a special keyword may be specified in the **Directory path name** field. The keyword is **&USERID**. It represents the PC user’s OS/390 user ID. It allows a single **smbtab** entry to mean a different directory depending on which user connects to the shared directory. See “Recommended Technique for PC User Access to Automounted Home Directories” on page 43 for more information on the usage of the **&USERID** keyword.

The shared printer fields in the following list must appear for each entry; they must appear in the order listed, and each field must be separated by at least one space or tab.

Device name

For shared printers, the device name of the printer being shared; for example, **/dev/prt1**.

Share name

The name to be associated with the printer queue being shared. A share name can contain numbers (0-9), letters (A-Z) and the following special characters \$ % ' - _ @ ~ ` ! () ^ # &. To ensure that a client can connect to an OS/390 SMB share, you should limit yourself to these characters. A share name can be up to 12 characters.

Note: A share name that is longer than 8 characters cannot be connected to by Windows 3.11 (Windows for Workgroups) clients.

Device type

The device type identifier for the type of device housing the share. For printers this must be **prt**. Enter the identifier in all lowercase letters.

Share description

The text description of the share. It can be up to 40 characters and is surrounded by double quotes; for example, “**Department printer**”.

Printer definition name

For shared printers, specifies the name of the printer definition. The printer definition name is created during the definition of the printer. Refer to the *OS/390 Infoprint Server Operation and Administration* book.

Printer type

For shared printers, specifies the type of printer. This can be the name of a printer type supplied by Windows. Refer to the *OS/390 Infoprint Server Operation and Administration* book.

When the **dfsshare** command is executed, it reads the **smbtab** file to verify that each directory or printer to be shared is listed in the file. A directory or printer must have an entry in the **smbtab** file if it is being shared. If a directory or printer is currently shared, it is not shared again. The **smbtab** file is also read and shared directories and shared printers are created during server initialization.

Example

The following **smbtab** file specifies an HFS directory, an RFS directory and one printer should be shared.

```
/dev/ufs2 myshare ufs "My share description" r/w 100 /ghi
/dev/ufs3 rfsshare1 ufs "USERA OS/390 data sets" r/o 50 /
/dev/prt1 myprt prt "Department printer" printname1 "Generic / Text Only"
```

Note: You can put comments in **smbtab** file. Comments start with # in column 1.

Implementation Specifics

The **smbtab** file is stored as an EBCDIC file in HFS. An example **smbtab** file can be found in **/opt/dfsglobal/examples**.

Related Information

Commands:

dfsexport
dfsshare

Files:

devtab
dfstab

Chapter 14. Distributed File Service SMB Commands

This chapter provides an alphabetical listing of all relevant SMB commands.

These commands are issued from the OMVS environment. OMVS users that are not using DCE should have the following line in their HFS **.profile** file in their home directory:

```
export _EUV_AUTOLOG=NO
```

Alternatively, if no OMVS users are using DCE, then the above line may be placed in the **/etc/profile** file. This causes it to take effect for all OMVS users.

dfsexport

Purpose

An OMVS command that exports (or unexports) HFS and RFS file systems. This makes underlying file systems available so that directories contained in them may be shared (see “dfsshare” on page 126).

Format

dfsexport [{-all | -filesystem *name*}] [-detach] [-verbose] [-help]

Options

- all** Specifies that all HFS and RFS file systems listed in the **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/dfstab** file are being exported. Use this option or use **-filesystem**; omit both options to list all file systems currently exported.
- filesystem *name*** Specifies the file system name of the HFS or RFS file system to be exported. This name is specified in the first or second field of the entry for the HFS or RFS file system in the **dfstab** file. Use this option or use **-all**; omit both options to list all HFS file systems currently exported.
- Note:** If you enter this command in TSO/E, the *name* parameter **must** be surrounded by double quotes (“”). Also, the **-filesystem** option can also be specified as **-aggregate** as shown in the *OS/390 Distributed File Service DFS Administration Guide and Reference*.
- detach** Used with the **-all** option, specifies that the file system(s) indicated with the command's other options are to be detached (no longer exported), making the corresponding shares unavailable to Windows clients. Use **-all** or **-filesystem** with this option indicating the exports are to be detached.
- Use the **-detach** option only when no users are accessing data on the HFS or RFS file systems to be detached or when a serious emergency warrants its use. When the **-detach** option is used, the command breaks all oplocks for data on a corresponding share before the file system is detached.
- To permanently detach a file system, it must also be removed from the **dfstab** file. Otherwise, the **dfsexport** command exports file systems the next time it is run.
- verbose** Directs the command to report on its actions as it executes.
- help** Prints the online help for this command. All other valid options specified with this option are ignored.

Note: There is a **-force** and a **-type** option on the **dfsexport** command that only apply to DCE DFS protocols.

Usage

The **dfsexport** command exports underlying HFS and RFS file systems so that directories may be shared from OS/390 to PC clients. Directories and printers that are shared are still available to other OS/390 users. Issue this command with no options to list the file systems already exported. The binary file for the **dfsexport** command resides in **/opt/dfsglobal/bin/dfsexport**.

The **dfsexport** command exports HFS and RFS file systems based on the values provided with its options. If the **-all** option is provided, the command shares all file systems listed in the **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/dfstab** file. If the **-filesystem** option is provided, it exports only the file system whose name is specified with the option. The specified name must be listed in the **dfstab** file.

When **dfsexport** executes, it reads the **dfstab** file on the local disk of the machine to determine the file systems available to be exported. A file system must have an entry in the **dfstab** file if it is being exported. Because this command reads the **dfstab** file, information supplied with its options must match exactly the information for a file system specified in that file.

The **dfsexport** command reads a list of all currently exported file systems that is maintained in the SMB Server of the local machine. The command does not export a file system that is currently exported.

Issuing the **dfsexport** command with no options lists the file systems currently exported from the local file server.

The **dfsexport** command is normally executed automatically when the OS/390 SMB server is started. This is controlled by the **export** entry of the **ioepdcf** file, see “ioepdcf” on page 112 for more information. When export is enabled, all indicated HFS and RFS file systems listed in the **dfstab** file are exported and all HFS and RFS directories listed in **smbtab** that are contained in those exported file systems are shared.

Prior to using this command to export a file system for the first time, perform the following

1. For HFS file systems, ensure that the file system is mounted locally; it can contain data or it can be empty. The SMB server must be running on the OS/390 system that owns the HFS file system. (RFS file systems cannot and need not be locally mounted.)
2. Create an entry for the file system in the **devtab** file on the OS/390 system on which the file system resides. This entry maps the minor device number to the HFS or RFS file system data set you wish to export. It also allows you to (optionally) specify whether character data translation should occur when the data is read or written by PC clients. For further information, see “devtab” on page 103.
3. Create an entry for the file system in the **dfstab** on the machine on which the partition resides. Use a unique file system name and ID number and a unique filesset ID number in the appropriate fields of the entry for the file system.

Before exporting a file system, also make sure that no local users have files open on the file system. The SMB server cannot effectively synchronize file access between users who opened files from a file system before the file system was exported and users who open files from the file system after the file system is exported because only the latter have tokens.

Privilege Required

The issuer must be logged in as **root** on the local machine. On OS/390, **root** refers to a user with a **UID = 0**.

Cautions

Before using the **-detach** option with this command, make sure no users are currently accessing data from file systems to be detached. The command does not verify that a device is not in use before removing it from the namespace. A user who is accessing data housed on a file system when it is detached is not able to save the data back to the device. Any attempt to perform an action that involves a detached file system elicits a message reporting that the device is Unknown.

Examples

On OS/390 SMB, the **dfsexport** process, by default, is started automatically by the DFS control task program, **dfscntl**. **dfscntl** and its child processes are, in turn, controlled in OS/390 SMB by the OS/390 system command, **MODIFY**.

You can also use the **MODIFY** OS/390 system command to export and unexport file systems on OS/390 SMB.

The following command causes the **dfsexport** program to run with the parameters specified in the **ioepdcf** configuration file. By default, this command exports all of the file systems that have entries in the machine's **dfstab** file:

```
modify dfs,start export
```

The following command causes the **dfsexport** program to run with the parameters specified in the **ioepdcf** configuration file. In this example, the command unexports all of the file systems that have entries in the **dfstab** file:

```
modify dfs,start unexport
```

The following command exports the file system whose device name (as it appears in the **dfstab** file) is **/dev/ufs1**:

```
# dfsexport /dev/ufs1
```

Implementation Specifics

The **dfsexport** process on OS/390 SMB, by default, is started automatically by the DFS control task program, **dfscntl**. The **dfsexport** process on OS/390 DFS runs under the control of the DFS control task, **dfscntl**. **dfscntl** and its child processes are controlled on OS/390 DFS by the OS/390 system command, **MODIFY**. For further information, see "modify dfs processes" on page 86.

After **dfsexport** exports the file system(s) specified, it creates any shared directories defined in **smbtab** that refer to those file systems. No shared printers are created. When **-detach** is specified, **dfsexport** unshares any shared directories that refer to file systems being unexported before unexporting the file systems.

This command may be issued from TSO/E or an OS/390 shell.

Related Information

Files:

devtab
dfstab
smbtab

dfsshare

Purpose

An OMVS command that shares (or unshares) HFS and RFS directories or printers with SMB clients.

Format

dfsshare [{-all | -share *name*}] [-type *name*] [-detach] [-verbose] [-help]

Options

-all Specifies that all HFS and RFS directories and printers listed in the **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/smbtab** file are shared with SMB clients. Use the **-type** option with this option to export only HFS and RFS files or only OS/390 Infoprint Server printers. Use this option or use **-share**; omit both options to list all shared files and shared printers currently shared with SMB clients.

-share *name* Specifies the share name of the HFS or RFS shared directory or shared printer. This name is specified in the second field of the entry for the HFS directory or printer in the **smbtab** file. Use this option or use **-all**; omit both options to list all HFS directories and printers currently shared with SMB clients.

Note: Some share names cannot be specified on OMVS commands or must be enclosed in single quotes. For example, a share name that begins with a dash (-) is interpreted as an option. You must use **dfsshare -all** or share it during initialization. A share name that begins with dollar (\$) must be enclosed in single quotes.

-type *name* Specifies that only shared directories or shared printers whose type matches the type specified with this option are shared. The type can be specified as **ufs** to share only HFS and RFS directories, or it can be specified as **prt** to share only printers. The type of each share appears in the third field of the entry for the device in the **smbtab** file.

Use this option only with the **-all** option; it is ignored if it is used without the **-all** option. If it is omitted and **-all** is used, the command shares both **ufs** and **prt** types.

- detach** Used with the **-all** option, specifies that the shared directories and shared printers indicated with the command's other options are detached (no longer shared), making them unavailable to SMB clients. Use **-all** or **-share** with this option to indicate the shares to be detached; use the **-type** option with **-all** to detach only one type of share.
- Use the **-detach** option only when no users are accessing data on the HFS or RFS shared directories to be detached or when a serious emergency warrants its use.
- To permanently detach a share, it must also be removed from the **smbtab** file. Otherwise, the **dfsshare** command shares the directories and printers the next time it is run (provided the directories or printers are included in the specification for the types to be shared).
- verbose** Directs the command to report on its actions as it executes.
- help** Prints the online help for this command. All other valid options specified with this option are ignored.

Usage

The **dfsshare** command shares HFS and RFS directories and printers from OS/390 to Windows clients. Directories and printers that are shared are still available to other OS/390 users. Issue this command with no options to list the directories and printers already shared. The binary file for the **dfsshare** command resides in **/opt/dfsglobal/bin/dfsshare**.

The **dfsshare** command shares HFS and RFS directories, printers, or both based on the values provided with its options. If the **-all** option is provided, the command shares all directories and printers listed in the **/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/smbtab** file. If the **-share** option is provided, it shares only the directory or printer whose share name is specified with the option. The specified name must be listed in the **smbtab** file.

The **-type** option can be used with the **-all** option to indicate that only directories or only printers are shared. If **ufs** is provided with the **-type** option, the command exports only directories; if **prt** is provided with the **-type** option, it exports only printers. If the **-type** option is used, the **-all** option must also be included; otherwise, the **-type** option is ignored.

When **dfsshare** executes, it reads the **smbtab** file to determine the directories and printers available to be shared. A directory or printer must have an entry in the **smbtab** file if it is shared. This command also invokes **dfsexport** to ensure that the underlying HFS or RFS file system that contains the shared directory is exported. Therefore, the corresponding HFS or RFS file system information must exist in **dfstab** and **devtab** for the shared directories that are being created. If there are additional file systems mounted below the shared directory that you want to allow PC users to access, those file systems must be exported also. The **dfsexport** command can be used for this purpose.

The **dfsshare** command reads a list of all currently shared directories and printers that is maintained in the SMB Server of the local machine. The command does not share a directory or printer that is currently shared. If you want to change the parameters for a printer or an HFS or RFS directory that is already shared, you must first detach (by using the **dfsshare -share name -detach** command) and then reshare (by using the **dfsshare -share name** command) for the new parameters to take effect.

Issuing the **dfsshare** command with no options lists the directories and printers currently shared to SMB clients.

The **dfsshare** command is automatically executed when the OS/390 SMB server is started (with SMB processing enabled). This is controlled by the **export** entry of the **ioepdcf** file, see “ioepdcf” on page 112 for more information. When export is enabled, all indicated HFS and RFS directories listed in the **smbtab** file are shared and all HFS and RFS file systems listed in **dfstab** and **devtab** are exported. In addition, all printers listed in the **smbtab** are shared (if the OS/390 Infoprint Server is enabled) regardless of the export entry in the **ioepdcf** file.

Privilege Required

The issuer must be logged in as **root** on the local machine. On OS/390, **root** refers to a user with a **UID = 0**.

Implementation Specifics

The **dfsshare** command exports the file system that is referred to by the shared directory (if it is not already exported) before creating the shared directory. When **-detach** is specified, the shared directory is unshared but no file systems are unexported.

The **dfsshare** command can only be issued from the OS/390 shell. It is not supported as a TSO/E command.

Related Information

Files:

devtab
dfstab
smbtab

Command:
dfsexport

smbpw

Purpose

An OMVS command that stores an OS/390 user's SMB password in the RACF database for use with SMB encrypted password support. Encrypted password support is used when the OS/390 SMB server is configured to support encrypted passwords by using the `_IOE_SMB_CLEAR_PW` environment variable in the `DFSKERN` process.

Format

`smbpw [-pw1 newpassword -pw2 newpassword] [-help]`

Options

- `-pw1 newpassword` Specifies the SMB password to be stored in the current OS/390 user's RACF DCE segment. The SMB password can be up to 14 characters. If the user issues the **smbpw** command without providing the password, **smbpw** prompts the user for the SMB password.
- `-pw2 newpassword` Specifies the same password again. This is to verify that the password was entered correctly.
- `-help` Prints the online help for this command. All other valid options specified with this option are ignored.

Usage

During SMB login processing, when encrypted password processing is configured, the OS/390 SMB server retrieves the user's SMB password from the user's RACF DCE segment. The **smbpw** command is used when a user needs to initially store or change the SMB password in their RACF DCE segment. The password entered is case sensitive. That is, it is stored in the RACF DCE segment exactly as the user typed it. In general, the password should be entered in lower case. It is folded to upper case by the SMB server, if necessary. This command requires that the changed password is entered twice.

The user may provide none or both occurrences of the password on the command line. If none is supplied, the system prompts for the changed password and then prompts for the changed password again. These passwords are verified to match.

The **smbpw** command does not verify that the password specified is the same as your Windows password. If you enter an incorrect password twice, the password is saved. If you determine that you have stored an incorrect password, use **smbpw** again, supplying the correct password.

If you are using SMB encrypted passwords and OS/390 DCE single sign-on, your SMB password and your DCE password must be the same since both of these come from the RACF DCE segment. However, if the DCE Security Server is running on the same system as the OS/390 DCE user, then the DCE single sign-on processing does not require the DCE password to be stored in RACF. So, in this case, the SMB password and the DCE password can be different.

Privilege Required

No privileges are required.

Examples

In this example, **mynewpw** is the SMB password to be stored in the RACF DCE segment:

```
$ smbpw mynewpw mynewpw
```

This example is the same as above except that the user is prompted for the new password:

```
TEST1:/home/test1/> smbpw
IOEW16057I Enter Password: mynewpw
IOEW16058I re-enter Password: mynewpw
IOEW16055I Your password has been updated.
```

Note: The passwords would not actually be displayed when they are entered at the prompt.

Implementation Specifics

The **smbpw** command can only be issued from the OS/390 shell. It is not supported as a TSO/E command. The user issuing the **smbpw** command must have a RACF DCE segment.

OS/390 users that do not use DCE should put the following line in their **.profile** file in their home directory:

```
export _EUV_AUTOLOG=NO
```

Alternatively, if no OS/390 users are using DCE, the above line may be placed in the **/etc/profile** file.

Appendix A. Environment Variables in SMB

This appendix lists the environment variables that affect the behavior of the SMB components. The environment variables that begin with **_IOE** are interpreted by OS/390 Distributed File Service processes. The other environment variables are interpreted by other OS/390 components (for example, OS/390 Language Environment).

Note: In the following table all the examples should be entered on one line, with no blanks, even though some of them appear on multiple lines.

Name	Description
_EUV_AUTOLOG	<p>This environment variable controls whether DCE autologin processing is attempted. For the OS/390 SMB server processes (dfscntl, dfskern, and dfsexport), this environment variable should always be set to NO. SMB Administrators who are not using DCE facilities should also specify this environment variable as NO in their OMVS environment. SMB users that are storing their SMB password via the smbpw command should also specify this environment variable as NO in their OMVS environment. The valid value is:</p> <p>NO Do not enable single sign-on processing.</p> <p>Any other value causes DCE autologin processing to be attempted.</p>
DCE_START_SOCKET_NAME	<p>The path name used as the well-known socket name by the SMB server processes during initialization.</p> <p>Default Value /opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/ioepk.soc Expected Value Character string. Example DCE_START_SOCKET_NAME=/opt/dfslocal/home/dfscntl/ioepk.soc Where Variable is Used All programs. If the default is not being used, this environment variable must be coded in the envar file for each process.</p>
LIBPATH	<p>The path names used to find DLLs.</p> <p>Default Value None Expected Value Character string. Example LIBPATH=/usr/lib:/usr/lpp/Printserv/lib Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>

Name	Description
NLSPATH	<p>A POSIX environment variable used by DCE that sets the search path for message catalogs.</p> <p>Default Value /usr/lib/nls/msg/En_US.IBM-1047/%N: /usr/lib/nls/msg/%L/%N: /usr/lib/nls/msg/prime/%N</p> <p>Where Variable is Used All SMB server processes</p>
TZ	<p>Sets the time zone used by a process.</p> <p>Default Value localtime</p> <p>Where Variable is Used All SMB server processes</p>

Name	Description
_IOE_DAEMONS_IN_AS	<p>This environment variable controls whether the DFSKERN process runs in its own address space or in the DFS Server Address Space.</p> <p>Default Value The default is ''. If '' is specified or the environment variable is not specified, dfskern runs in the DFS Server Address Space.</p> <p>Expected Value DFSKERN or ''</p> <p>Example _IOE_DAEMONS_IN_AS=DFSKERN In this case, DFSKERN runs in its own address space.</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSCNTL</p>
_IOE_DFS_MODIFY_PATH	<p>The path used as the well-known socket name by the OS/390 SMB processes when registering with DFSCNTL to receive modify commands (F DFS, QUERY DFSKERN).</p> <p>Default Value /opt/dfslocal/home/dfscntl/modify.rendevous</p> <p>Expected Value Character string.</p> <p>Example _IOE_DFS_MODIFY_PATH=/opt/dfslocal/home/dfscntl/test.rendevous</p> <p>Where Variable is Used All programs. If the default is not being used, this environment variable must be coded in the envvar file for each process.</p>
_IOE_DIRECTORY_CACHE_SIZE	<p>The number of 512 byte blocks used to cache HFS directory entries.</p> <p>Default Value 2048</p> <p>Expected Value The value specified must be a numeric value greater than or equal to 768.</p> <p>Example _IOE_DIRECTORY_CACHE_SIZE=4096</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_DYNAMIC_EXPORT	<p>If ON, when a client crosses a local mount point into a file system that is not known to the SMB server, the file system is dynamically assigned values and exported.</p> <p>Default Value OFF</p> <p>Expected Value ON or OFF</p> <p>Example _IOE_DYNAMIC_EXPORT=ON</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p> <p>Note This environment variable is turned off when DCE DFS processing is enabled (when _IOE_PROTOCOL_RPC=ON).</p>

Name	Description
_IOE_EXPORT_TIMEOUT	<p>The number of minutes that a file system must be idle before it is dynamically unexported. The root of a share is never dynamically unexported.</p> <p>Default Value 15</p> <p>Expected Value OFF or a number of minutes greater than 0 and less than 480 (8 hours).</p> <p>Example _IOE_EXPORT_TIMEOUT=OFF</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_HFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE	<p>Specifies the path name of the hfsattr file that contains the definition of file name suffixes that controls whether the data should be translated by the SMB server.</p> <p>Default Value None</p> <p>Expected Value Character string, 132 characters or less.</p> <p>Example _IOE_HFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE=/etc/httpd.conf</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p> <p>Notes This file contains AddType statements in the same format as the IBM HTTP Server's httpd.conf file. All statements other than AddType are ignored.</p> <p>IBM supplies an example file in /opt/dfsglobal/examples/cmattr. This file can be copied and modified appropriately. It is recommended that the modified file reside in the /opt/dfslocal/var/dfs directory so that it is with the other customizable files.</p>

Name	Description
_IOE_HFS_TRANSLATION	<p>This environment variable controls the conversion of HFS data to the appropriate data format. Converts incoming data from ASCII ISO 8859-1 to the local OS/390 code page to ASCII ISO 8859-1. Refer to "File Data Translation" on page 44, for information on data translation.</p> <p>Default Value Off Expected Value On, Off, or Auto On means that all data is translated. Off means that no data is translated. Auto means that data that is received by (read) or sent to (written) the SMB server is examined to determine if the data is text or not. When data is received by (read) the SMB server, the first 255 bytes of data are compared against a table of valid text (EBCDIC) characters. If all 255 characters are deemed to be valid characters, the file is marked for translation and all data is translated. Otherwise, the data is not translated. When data is sent from (written) the SMB server, the first 255 bytes of data are compared against a table of valid ASCII text characters. If all 255 characters are deemed to be valid characters, the file is marked for translation and all data is translated. Otherwise, the data is not translated.</p> <p>Example Where Variable is Used _IOE_HFS_TRANSLATION=ON DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_INHERIT_TRANSLATION	<p>When ON, for a dynamically exported file system, the translation option of the parent file system is inherited.</p> <p>Default Value ON Expected Value ON or OFF Example Where Variable is Used _IOE_INHERIT_TRANSLATION=OFF DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT	<p>The name of a RACF-defined user that is associated with unauthenticated users attempting to access shared directories or shared printers. This ID must be RACF-defined with an OS/390 UNIX segment.</p> <p>Default Value None Expected Value A character string, eight characters or less. Example Where Variable is Used _IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT=DFSDFLT DFSKERN</p>

Name	Description
_IOE_PROTOCOL_RPC	<p>An environment variable that controls whether the DCE DFS protocol is supported (using DCE RPC).</p> <p>Default Value ON Expected Value ON or OFF Example _IOE_PROTOCOL_RPC=OFF Where Variable is Used DFSKERN Notes This environment variable also affects DCE applications and commands. It should not be used in any other processes including shell user processes.</p>
_IOE_PROTOCOL_SMB	<p>An environment variable that controls whether the SMB protocol is supported (using TCP/IP).</p> <p>Default Value OFF Expected Value ON or OFF Example _IOE_PROTOCOL_SMB=ON Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_RFS_ALLOC_TIMEOUT	<p>Specifies the time period (in seconds) that an RFS data set remains allocated after there has been no access to the data set through the DFS/SMB server. After this time period, the data set is deallocated and is available to other applications such as ISPF.</p> <p>Default Value 300 (5 minutes) Expected Value A number greater than or equal to 30. Example _IOE_RFS_ALLOC_TIMEOUT=600 Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE	<p>Specifies the name of the (rfstab) file that contains the table for describing the attributes used to manipulate RFS files. The value can be the name of an HFS file, a fixed block partitioned data set, or a fixed-block sequential data set with a record length of 80.</p> <p>Default Value /opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/rfstab Expected Value Character string describing the attributes file being used (maximum 255 characters). Example _IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE=/'NFSAD MIN.NFSS(NFSSATT)' Where Variable is Used DFSKERN Notes This environment variable can be overridden for specific file systems in the devtab file. See "devtab" on page 103.</p>

Name	Description
_IOE_RFS_STATUS_REFRESH_TIME	<p>Specifies the time interval (in seconds) that the SMB server uses to refresh its cache of exported record data set names and attributes.</p> <p>Default Value 600 (10 minutes) Expected Value A number greater than zero. Example _IOE_RFS_STATUS_REFRESH_TIME=360 Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_RFS_TRANSLATION	<p>Specifies whether RFS data should be translated. If conversion is on, incoming data is translated from ASCII ISO 8859-1 to the local OS/390 code page. Outgoing data is converted from the local OS/390 code page to ISO 8859-1.</p> <p>Default Value OFF Expected Value ON or OFF Example _IOE_RFS_TRANSLATION=ON Where Variable is Used DFSKERN Notes This environment variable can be overridden for specific file systems in the devtab file. See “devtab” on page 103.</p>
_IOE_RFS_WORKER_THREADS	<p>Specifies the number of threads to be started in dfskern to service open and close requests for RFS files.</p> <p>Default Value 1 Expected Value A number greater than zero. Example _IOE_RFS_WORKER_THREADS=3 Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_BROWSE_INTERVAL	<p>Specifies the maximum Browser announcement interval (in milliseconds).</p> <p>Default Value 720000 (12 minutes) Expected Value A number between 600000 (10 minutes) and 720000 (12 minutes). Example _IOE_SMB_BROWSE_INTERVAL=600000 Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_CALLBACK_POOL	<p>Specifies the number of secondary pool threads for processing SMB callback requests.</p> <p>Default Value 2 Expected Value A number greater than 0. Example _IOE_SMB_CALLBACK_POOL=3 Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>

Name	Description
<p><code>_IOE_SMB_CLEAR_PW</code></p>	<p>Specifies the OS/390 SMB server policy for flowing the SMB password in the clear.</p> <p>REQUIRED Specifies that passwords in the clear are required.</p> <p>ALLOWED Specifies that passwords in the clear are allowed. Authentication is attempted using encrypted passwords if the client supports it. Otherwise, authentication is attempted assuming an unencrypted (clear text) password was used.</p> <p>Note: ALLOWED was originally provided for clients that had no support for encrypted passwords. We have subsequently determined that all supported clients include encrypted password support, so the ALLOWED setting is not useful. We suggest that you use REQUIRED for clear passwords and NOTALLOWED for encrypted passwords.</p> <p>NOTALLOWED Specifies that passwords in the clear are not allowed. Authentication is attempted using encrypted passwords only.</p> <p>Default Value REQUIRED</p> <p>Expected Value REQUIRED, ALLOWED, NOTALLOWED</p> <p>Example <code>_IOE_SMB_CLEAR_PW=NOTALLOWED</code></p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
<p><code>_IOE_SMB_COMPUTER_NAME</code></p>	<p>Specifies the name being used by SMB redirectors (that is, clients) to contact this server. If a Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS) server is available (see the <code>_IOE_SMB_PRIMARY_WINS</code> environment variable), the SMB computer name is used to identify this server to the WINS server.</p> <p>Default Value The TCP/IP hostname of this system.</p> <p>Expected Value Character string, 15 characters or less</p> <p>Example <code>_IOE_SMB_COMPUTER_NAME=OS390DATA1</code></p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p> <p>Note If you are using Windows 2000 clients, this environment variable must specify (or be defaulted to) the TCP/IP hostname to allow Search Computername functionality to work.</p>

Name	Description
_IOE_SMB_CROSS_MOUNTS	<p>When ON, SMB clients cross local mount points (as in prior releases). When OFF, SMB clients go under local mount points.</p> <p>Default Value ON</p> <p>Expected Value ON or OFF</p> <p>Example _IOE_SMB_CROSS_MOUNTS=OFF</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_DESCRIPTION	<p>Specifies the description of this server that appears on the PC.</p> <p>Default Value DFS/MVS CIFS Server</p> <p>Expected Value Character string, 50 characters or less</p> <p>Example _IOE_SMB_DESCRIPTION=OS/390 File Server Note: In this example there are embedded blanks.</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_DIR_PERMS	<p>The permissions for a directory created by the SMB server at the request of an SMB client. (This can also be specified on a shared directory basis. See “smbtab” on page 118.)</p> <p>Default Value 777</p> <p>Expected Value The value specified must be a three digit numeric value where each digit is greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to 7.</p> <p>Example _IOE_SMB_DIR_PERMS=755</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_DOMAIN_NAME	<p>Specifies the name being used as the domain name for this server. If possible, specify the same domain or workgroup as your client PCs.</p> <p>Default Value None</p> <p>Expected Value Character string, 15 characters or less</p> <p>Example _IOE_SMB_DOMAIN_NAME=OS/390DOMAIN1</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>

Name	Description
_IOE_SMB_FILE_PERMS	<p>The permissions for a file created by the SMB server at the request of an SMB client. (This can also be specified on a shared directory basis. See “smbtab” on page 118.) It also limits which write permission bits can be turned on by an SMB client.</p> <p>Default Value 777</p> <p>Expected Value The value specified must be a three digit numeric value where each digit is greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to 7.</p> <p>Example _IOE_SMB_FILE_PERMS=750</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p> <p>Note: If Read-only is set, the write permissions (222) are turned off. In this case, a file with permissions of 750 would become 550. If Read-only is cleared, the write permissions that intersect with this specification is turned on. In the example, the intersection of 750 and 222 would cause 200 to be or'd into the permissions of the file.</p>
_IOE_SMB_IDMAP	<p>Specifies the location of the smbidmap file. The smbidmap file contains the mapping of SMB user IDs to OS/390 user IDs.</p> <p>Default Value None</p> <p>Expected Value Character string specifying the path name of the smbidmap file.</p> <p>Example _IOE_SMB_IDMAP=/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/smbidmap</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_IDLE_TIMEOUT	<p>Specifies how long (in seconds) an SMB session can remain inactive before it is terminated.</p> <p>Default Value 400</p> <p>Expected Value A number between 0 and 4294967295.</p> <p>Example _IOE_SMB_IDLE_TIMEOUT=4000</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>

Name	Description
_IOE_SMB_MAIN_POOL	<p>Specifies the number of primary pool threads for processing SMB requests. This is the number of SMB requests that can be handled by the SMB server at the same time without queuing them. If you have a large number of concurrently active PC clients, consider increasing this number. Note that we are referring to concurrently active users, not just logged on users. Concurrently active users are sending SMB requests to the SMB server at the same time. This number should be set to your best estimate of the maximum number of concurrent requests that might be received at the SMB server at the same time.</p> <p>Default Value 14 Expected Value A number greater than 0. Example _IOE_SMB_MAIN_POOL=20 Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_MAXXMT	<p>Specifies the maximum server buffer size that is returned on the SMB Server Negotiate response.</p> <p>Default Value 65535 bytes Expected Value A number between 1024 and 65535 Example _IOE_SMB_MAXXMT=8192 Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_NT_SMBS	<p>Specifies whether new SMBs in the NT protocol dialect are to be accepted from PC clients. There may be some workloads that perform better with this set to OFF.</p> <p>Default Value ON Expected Value ON or OFF Example _IOE_SMB_NT_SMBS=OFF Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_OCSF	<p>Specifies whether OCSF can be used for encrypted passwords. In order to use encryption hardware, OCSF (and therefore ON) is required.</p> <p>Default Value ON Expected Value ON or OFF Example _IOE_SMB_OCSF=OFF Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_OPLOCK_TIMEOUT	<p>Specifies the Opportunistic Lock Timeout period (in seconds).</p> <p>Default Value 35 Expected Value A number between 0 and 4294967295. Example _IOE_SMB_OPLOCK_TIMEOUT=60 Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>

Name	Description
_IOE_SMB_OPLOCKS	<p>Specifies whether the server allows clients to use Opportunistic Locks on files. This allows some SMB clients to cache data at the client. This can improve performance.</p> <p>Default Value ON Expected Value ON or OFF Example _IOE_SMB_OPLOCKS=OFF Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_PRIMARY_WINS	<p>Specifies the IP address of the Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS) server that this server announces itself to and forwards proxy WINS requests to.</p> <p>Default Value None Expected Value An IP address (<i>n.n.n.n</i> where <i>n</i> is a number between 0 and 255). Example _IOE_SMB_PRIMARY_WINS=9.120.44.55 Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_PROTOCOL_LEVEL	<p>Specifies the highest level of SMB protocol dialect that is negotiated with the PC client. NT is the highest dialect that the SMB server supports. LANMAN is the next lower dialect supported by the SMB server. Normally, this value should remain NT.</p> <p>Default Value NT Expected Value NT or LANMAN Example _IOE_SMB_PROTOCOL_LEVEL=LANMAN Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_RAW	<p>Specifies whether raw mode is supported in the SMB Server Negotiate response. Raw mode is used for large data transfers.</p> <p>Default ON Expected Value ON or OFF Example _IOE_SMB_RAW=OFF Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_SCOPE	<p>Specifies the Scope ID for the Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS) server. The Scope ID defines a group of computers that recognize a registered NetBIOS name. (This should normally be omitted.)</p> <p>Default Value None Expected Value Character string, 224 characters or less. Example _IOE_SMB_SCOPE=MYDEPARTMENTSCOPE Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>

Name	Description
_IOE_SMB_SECONDARY_WINS	<p>Specifies the IP address of the Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS) server that this server announces itself to and forwards proxy WINS requests to if the Primary WINS server does not respond.</p> <p>Default Value None Expected Value An IP address (<i>n.n.n.n</i> where <i>n</i> is a number between 0 and 255). Example _IOE_SMB_SECONDARY_WINS=9.120.66.77 Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_TOKEN_FILE_MAX	<p>Specifies the maximum number of files that the SMB token cache should keep tokens for.</p> <p>Default Value 4096 Expected Value A number greater than or equal to 4096. Example _IOE_SMB_TOKEN_FILE_MAX=6144 Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_SMB_WINS_PROXY	<p>Specifies whether this server can act as a Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS) server proxy. WINS requests sent to this server are forwarded to a WINS server on another computer (see “_IOE_SMB_PRIMARY_WINS” on page 142).</p> <p>Default Value OFF Expected Value ON or OFF Example _IOE_SMB_WINS_PROXY=ON Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_TKCLUE_CACHE_SIZE	<p>Specifies the number of file tokens for local HFS access that can be cached.</p> <p>Default Value 4096 Expected Value A number greater than or equal to 4096. Example _IOE_TKCLUE_CACHE_SIZE=8192 Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_TKM_MAX_TOKENS	<p>Specifies the maximum number of tokens that can be held in the SMB server memory.</p> <p>Default Value 10240 Expected Value A positive number. The minimum value is 10240. Example _IOE_TKM_MAX_TOKENS=20480 Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>

Name	Description
_IOE_TKMGLUE_SERVER_THREADS	<p>The number of threads to be started in DFSKERN to service token requests from the glue layer. The glue layer makes token requests during local HFS access.</p> <p>Default Value 5</p> <p>Expected Value The value specified must be a numeric value greater than or equal to 5.</p> <p>Example _IOE_TKMGLUE_SERVER_THREADS=8</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_VM_CACHE_SIZE	<p>Specifies the size, in bytes, of the virtual memory used by DFSKERN for all file systems that are exported.</p> <p>Default Value 1M</p> <p>Expected Value A positive number. The value may be a whole positive integer followed by a 'K' (denoting kilobytes), or a whole positive integer followed by an 'M' (denoting megabytes).</p> <p>Example _IOE_VM_CACHE_SIZE=2M</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p> <p>Notes The virtual memory is used for data in all file systems that are exported.</p>
_IOE_VM_MAX_FILES	<p>Specifies the maximum number of files that can be contained in the virtual memory used by DFSKERN for all file systems that are exported.</p> <p>Default Value 4096</p> <p>Expected Value A positive number. The minimum value is 4096.</p> <p>Example _IOE_VM_MAX_FILES=6144</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>
_IOE_VNODE_CACHE_SIZE	<p>The size of the HFS vnode cache, that is, the number of vnodes.</p> <p>Default Value 4096</p> <p>Expected Value The value specified must be a numeric value greater than or equal to 2048.</p> <p>Example _IOE_VNODE_CACHE_SIZE=6144</p> <p>Where Variable is Used DFSKERN</p>

Appendix B. Additional Information Using the SMB Server

This appendix contains information that may be useful when using the OS/390 SMB server.

Client Does Not Communicate

If the client does not communicate with the OS/390 SMB server, it may be because a service pack has been applied or is present on the client that requires the challenge/response type of logon. For the service pack noted below (or a later service pack), the registry needs to be updated to allow unencrypted passwords.

WARNING: Using Registry Editor incorrectly can cause serious, system-wide problems that may require you to reinstall Windows to correct them. Microsoft cannot guarantee that any problems resulting from the use of Registry Editor can be solved. Use this tool at your own risk.

Note: If you are using the encrypted password support and your users have entered their SMB password in RACF using the OMVS **smbpw** command, this registry change is not necessary. Users that have made this change to the registry do not need to remove it to use encrypted passwords.

Windows NT 4.0

This section shows you how to update the registry for Windows NT 4.0 with Service Pack 3 (or later).

Updating the Registry:

The following steps show you how to update the registry:

1. From an MS-DOS command prompt window, type **regedt32**.
2. Double-click on **SYSTEM** (below HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE).
3. Double-click on **CurrentControlSet**.
4. Double-click on **Services**.
5. Double-click on **Rdr** (you may need to scroll down to find it).
6. Click on **Parameters**.
7. Click the **Edit** pull-down menu on the Registry Editor and click **Add Value**.
8. Type a Value Name of EnablePlainTextPassword.
9. Choose a Data Type of REG_DWORD.
10. Click the **OK** button.
11. Type a Data value of 1.

12. Ensure that the Radix is Hex.

13. Click the **OK** button.

Your registry should now be updated. If you make this change on one machine, you can export this change to a **reg** file. If you can then make that file available to the client machines that need it, users can apply the change by double clicking the **reg** file.

Creating a reg File that Contains the Registry Update:

After making the registry change, use the following steps to create the **reg** file:

1. From an MS-DOS command prompt window, type **regedit**.
2. Click the plus (+) next to HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE to expand the sub-entries.
3. Click the plus (+) next to SYSTEM to expand the sub-entries.
4. Click the plus (+) next to CurrentControlSet to expand the sub-entries.
5. Click the plus (+) next to Services to expand the sub-entries.
6. Click the plus (+) next to Rdr to expand the sub-entries.
7. Click on **Parameters** to show the values in the right pane.
8. Click the **Registry** pull-down menu on the Registry Editor and click **Export Registry File....**
9. Choose the directory that you want to save the **reg** file into.
10. Type a file name for the **reg** file (the .reg suffix is added for you).
11. Ensure that the Export Range indicates Selected Branch.
12. Click the **Save** button.

The **reg** file is created. If you right-click on the **reg** file and choose Edit, the contents of the **reg** file looks like the following:

```
REGEDIT4
```

```
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Rdr\Parameters]  
"EnablePlainTextPassword"=dword:00000001
```

Windows 2000

This section shows you how to update the registry for Windows 2000 Professional.

1. Click Start, point to **Settings**, click on **Control Panel**.
2. Double-click on **Administration Tools**.
3. Double-click on **Local Security Policy**.

4. On the left pane, click on the plus (+) to expand Local Policies (under Security Settings).
5. On the left pane, click on **Security Options**.
6. Double-click on Send unencrypted passwords to connect to third-party SMB servers.
7. Click the Enabled radio button, and then click OK.

Windows 95 or Windows 98

This section show you how to update the registry for Windows 95 OSR2 (or later) or Windows 98.

Updating the Registry:

The following steps show you how to update the registry:

1. From an MS-DOS command prompt window, type **regedit**.
2. Click the plus (+) next to HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE to expand the sub-entries.
3. Click the plus (+) next to SYSTEM to expand the sub-entries.
4. Click the plus (+) next to CurrentControlSet to expand the sub-entries.
5. Click the plus (+) next to Services to expand the sub-entries.
6. Click the plus (+) next to VxD to expand the sub-entries.
7. Click on **VNETSUP** to show the values in the right pane.
8. Click the **Edit** pull-down menu on the Registry Editor and move your mouse to New.
9. Click **DWORD Value**.
10. Type a New Value of EnablePlainTextPassword and press **Enter**.
11. Right-click the **EnablePlainTextPassword** entry and click on **Modify**.
12. Type a Value Data of 1.
13. Ensure that the Base is Hexadecimal.
14. Click the **OK** button.

Your registry should now be updated. If you make this change on one machine, you can export this change to a **reg** file. If you can then make that file available to the client machines that need it, users can apply the change by double clicking the **reg** file.

Creating a reg File that Contains the Registry Update:

After making the registry change, use the following steps to create the **reg** file:

1. From an MS-DOS command prompt window, type **regedit**.

2. Click the plus (+) next to HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE to expand the sub-entries.
3. Click the plus (+) next to SYSTEM to expand the sub-entries.
4. Click the plus (+) next to CurrentControlSet to expand the sub-entries.
5. Click the plus (+) next to Services to expand the sub-entries.
6. Click the plus (+) next to VxD to expand the sub-entries.
7. Click on **VNETSUP** to show the values in the right pane.
8. Click the **Registry** pull-down menu on the Registry Editor and click **Export Registry File...**
9. Choose the directory that you want to save the **reg** file into.
10. Type a File name for the **reg** file (the .reg suffix is added for you).
11. Ensure that the Export Range indicates Selected Branch.
12. Click the **Save** button.

The **reg** file is created. If you right-click on the **reg** file and choose Edit, the contents of the reg file looks like the following:

```
REGEDIT4
```

```
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\VxD\VNETSUP]  
"EnablePlainTextPassword"=dword:00000001
```

Windows 95 Client Does Not Allow Net Use Command

If a Windows 95 client does not allow the **net use** command to be issued from an MS-DOS command prompt window, you may be able to allow it by changing the MS-DOS command prompt window properties. Follow these steps to enable the **net use** command:

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Point to **Programs** and click **MS-DOS Prompt**.
3. Click on the **MS-DOS icon** in the upper left corner and click on **Properties**.
4. Click on the **Program** tab.
5. Click on **Advanced...**
6. Make sure the check box that says 'Prevent MS-DOS-based programs from detecting Windows' is checked.
7. Click the **OK** button to close the Advanced Program Settings panel.

8. Click the **OK** button to close the MS-DOS Prompt Properties panel. (You need to close the window and reopen it to make this take effect.)

At this point you should be able to issue the **net use** command in the MS-DOS Prompt window.

Windows NT Client Does Not Allow Net View Command

If a Windows NT client does not allow the **net view** command, it may be because you have not connected to the SMB server yet. The registry entry modification in 'Client Does Not Communicate' above, does not allow the **net view** command on Windows NT if you have not yet connected to the SMB server. The solution is to issue **net use** to the SMB server before you issue a **net view** to the SMB server.

Editor or Word Processor Changes the Owner/Permissions of the HFS File

Many Editors and Word Processors, when saving a file, do not simply update the file. Rather, in order to avoid losing data if the system should fail during the save operation, they first create a new file with a temporary name and save the data there, then they erase the original file, and then they rename the file with the temporary name to the original file name. Since a new file was created, it is owned by the user that created it. This may be different than the original file's owner. Also, the file permissions are changed to the default permissions which may be different from the original permissions.

Editor or Word Processor Cannot Save a File to HFS

Many Editors and Word Processors, when saving a file, do not simply update the file. Rather, in order to avoid losing data if the system should fail during the save operation, they first create a new file with a temporary name and save the data there, then they erase the original file, and then they rename the file with the temporary name to the original file name. Since a new file is being created, the user must have write and execute permission to the directory that the file is contained in and read and write permission to the file. If the user does not have the required permissions on both the directory and the file, the save is denied.

Different End Of Line Characters in Text Files

The PC environment and the OS/390 UNIX System Services environment normally use different end of line characters in text files. The end of line characters are placed into the file as the text lines are written by the application (for example, an editor) based on the environment the application is running on (Windows versus OS/390 UNIX System Services). If you are sharing text files between the PC environment and the UNIX environment, one of the environments sees end of line characters at the end of each line of text that it does not normally expect. Some applications may not process a text file if the wrong end of line characters are in the text file. For example, the OS/390 C/C++ compiler does not compile source code with PC end of line characters. You should try to use applications on the PC that support UNIX end of line characters (see note below). For example, Microsoft WordPad correctly displays text files that have UNIX end of line characters. It also maintains UNIX end of line characters when such a

file is saved. There are also PC applications that optionally create a text file with UNIX end of line characters. An example of an application that creates a text file with UNIX end of line characters is MicroEdge Visual SlickEdit. Many PC applications tolerates UNIX end of line characters.

If you want to determine which end of line characters a text file contains, you can use the following OMVS command to display the hexadecimal values of the characters in a file:

```
od -cx textfile.txt
```

where *textfile.txt* is the name of the text file you want to display.

When a text file has PC end of line characters, you can create another file with the same data but with UNIX end of line characters with the following OMVS command:

```
tr -d '\r' <textfile.txt >newfile.txt
```

where *textfile.txt* is the text file with PC end of line characters and *newfile.txt* is a new text file with UNIX end of line characters.

Note: In general, UNIX text files contain a newline character at the end of each line. In ASCII, newline is X'0A'. In EBCDIC, newline is X'15'. (For example, ASCII code page ISO8859-1 and EBCDIC code page IBM-1047 translate back and forth between these characters.) Windows programs normally use a carriage return followed by a line feed character at the end of each line of a text file. In ASCII, carriage return/line feed is X'0D'/X'0A'. In EBCDIC, carriage return/line feed is X'0D'/X'15'. The **tr** command above simply deletes all of the carriage return characters. (Line feed and newline characters have the same hexadecimal value.) The SMB server can translate end of line characters from ASCII to EBCDIC and back but it does not change the type of delimiter (PC versus UNIX) nor the number of characters in the file.

PC Clients Disconnect During High DASD I/O Activity

When there is high DASD I/O activity on an HFS file system, there may be an undue delay for HFS requests. This may cause the PC clients to disconnect from the OS/390 SMB server because they think the SMB server is down. A possible bypass to this situation is to mount the HFS file system with a sync interval that is less than 60 seconds. For example,

```
MOUNT FILESYSTEM('OMVS.ABC.DEF') MOUNTPOINT('/abc/def') TYPE(HFS) MODE(RDWR) PARM('SYNC(30)')
```

sets the sync interval to 30 seconds for the HFS file system specified. See the TSO/E MOUNT command in the *OS/390 UNIX System Services Command Reference*, SC28-1892, for information on the sync interval parameter.

Appendix C. Using Both SMB and DCE DFS

This appendix contains information that must be considered if you plan to use the OS/390 Distributed File Service DCE DFS protocols (enabled by using the `_IOE_PROTOCOL_RPC=ON` environment variable) along with the SMB protocols (enabled by using the `_IOE_PROTOCOL_SMB=ON` environment variable).

Note: Dynamic export is not supported when `_IOE_PROTOCOL_RPC=ON`.

Fileset IDs in `dfstab`

The `dfstab` and `devtab` files specify HFS and RFS file systems that are being exported. Those files are used for the SMB protocol and the DCE DFS protocol.

When you use the DFS protocol, fileset IDs must be assigned by the `flserver`. (This is required whether SMB protocols are being used or not.) For an HFS fileset, a fileset ID is assigned by the `flserver` by using the `fts crfldbentry` command. The administrator enters the assigned fileset ID in the fileset's `dfstab` entry.

If you have been using DCE DFS protocols and you are now adding SMB protocols, the fileset IDs for any exported HFS or RFS filesets have already been assigned by the `flserver` and are already specified in the `dfstab`. The OS/390 Distributed File Service SMB Server exports these same filesets for the SMB protocol. You can then create your `smbtab` entries to specify which shared directories should be available to PC clients. If you need to export any additional HFS or RFS filesets, the fileset IDs must be assigned by the `flserver` (even if they are only going to be accessed by SMB protocols).

Or, if you have been using SMB protocols and you are now adding DCE DFS protocols, the HFS and RFS fileset IDs specified in the `dfstab` must be changed to numbers that have been assigned by the `flserver`. This means that you must enable and start the Distributed File Service Server for DCE DFS protocols, assign the HFS and RFS fileset IDs by using the `fts crfldbentry` command, update your `dfstab` entries for the HFS and RFS fileset IDs, and then export the filesets (use the `modify dfs,start export` system command or the `dfsexport` command). If you need to add any HFS or RFS filesets, their fileset IDs must also be assigned by the `flserver`.

Crossing Local Mount Points

When the SMB protocol is used (without the DCE DFS protocol), PC users cross local mount points. That is, when a PC user changes the current directory (for example, `dirA`) to a subdirectory (for example, `dirB`) by using the `cd` command and that subdirectory (`dirB`) is a mount point, the PC user “crosses” into the root directory of the file system that is mounted on `dirB`. A `dir` command against `dirB` shows the files and directories contained in the root directory of the file system mounted on `dirB` (as opposed to showing the files and directories that might actually be contained in `dirB`). This assumes that the file system has been exported and that the user is authorized. In fact, any files or subdirectories that are actually contained in `dirB` are inaccessible. This is normal behavior for a UNIX file system.

When the DCE DFS protocol is used (regardless of whether the SMB protocol is used), clients do not cross mount points. Rather, clients see the files and directories that are actually contained in the mount point directory. This is how DFS clients expect the server to perform, and is how the server has performed in previous releases.

It is possible for SMB clients to cross local mount points and for DCE DFS clients to not cross local mount points. In fact, this is the default behavior. Whether SMB clients cross local mount points is controlled by the `_IOE_SMB_CROSS_MOUNTS` environment variable of `dfskern`.

SMB Encrypted Passwords and DCE Single Sign-on

If you are using SMB encrypted passwords and OS/390 DCE single sign-on, your SMB password and your DCE password must be the same since both of these come from the RACF DCE segment. However, if the DCE Security Server is running on the same system as the OS/390 DCE user, then the DCE single sign-on processing does not require the DCE password to be stored in RACF. So, in this case, the SMB password can be stored in the RACF DCE segment and the RACF DCE segment is not used for DCE single sign-on.

Appendix D. Customizable Files

Notes:

1. The symbolic link **/opt/dfsglobal** refers to the directory **/usr/lpp/dfs/global**.
2. The symbolic link **/opt/dfslocal** refers to the directory **/etc/dfs**.

The following table summarizes the Distributed File Service example files that are supplied by IBM and where they are placed so that you can customize them to meet your local DCE DFS or SMB support requirements. The table indicates whether the file applies to (DCE) DFS, SMB, or both. Files that apply to support not being used are created but do not need to be modified.

Most of the IBM supplied files are copied from the **/opt/dfsglobal/examples** directory to the target sub-directory in **/opt/dfslocal (/etc/dfs)** by the **/opt/dfsglobal/scripts/dfs_cpfiles** program run as part of the Distributed File Service post installation processing described in “Chapter 3. Post Installation Processing” on page 13.

The **dfs_cpfiles** program does not replace a file in the target directory if it already exists. When installing a new Distributed File Service release, you can compare the contents of the IBM supplied files with your current customized files to determine if there are any new optional parameters that you may want to consider specifying.

The customizable files used for a previous release can be used for a new release if the same IP address, RACF user definitions and exported file definitions apply to the target image for the new release. If any of these definitions are not the same for the target image, the customizable files should be reviewed and modified as required. Refer to “Chapter 2. SMB Migration Considerations” on page 7.

Table 4. OS/390 DFS Customizable Files

IBM Supplied File	Customizable File	Applies To
/opt/dfs/global/examples/bakserver.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/bakserver/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/boserver.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/boserver/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/butc01.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/butc01/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/butc02.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/butc02/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/butc03.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/butc03/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/butc04.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/butc04/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/butc05.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/butc05/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/butc06.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/butc06/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/butc07.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/butc07/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/butc08.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/butc08/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/cmattr (applies to both cmattr and hfsattr)	CMATTR (not created by dfs_cpfiles; cmattr file defined by envar_IOE_CM_ATTRIBUTES_FILE)	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/daemonct.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/daemonct/envar	both
/opt/dfs/global/examples/devtab	/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/devtab	both
/opt/dfs/global/examples/dfs.ioepdcf	/opt/dfslocal/etc/ioepdcf	both
/opt/dfs/global/examples/dfscm.CacheInfo	/opt/dfslocal/etc/CacheInfo	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/dfscm.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/dfscm/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/dfscntl.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/dfscntl/envar	both
/opt/dfs/global/examples/dfsexport.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/dfsexport/envar	both

IBM Supplied File	Customizable File	Applies To
(None)	DFSIDMAP (not created by dfs_cpfiles; dfsidmap file defined by envvar _IOE_MVS_IDMAP)	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/dfskern.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/dfskern/envar	both
/opt/dfs/global/examples/dfstab	/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/dfstab	both
/opt/dfs/global/examples/flserver.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/flserver/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/ftserver.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/ftserver/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/growaggr.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/growaggr/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/cmattr (applies to both cmattr and hfsattr)	HFSATTR (not created by dfs_cpfiles; hfsattr file defined by envvar _IOE_HFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE)	both
/opt/dfs/global/examples/newaggr.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/newaggr/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/repserver.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/repserver/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/rfstab	/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/rfstab	both
/opt/dfs/global/examples/salvage.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/salvage/envar	DFS
(None)	SMBIDMAP (not created by dfs_cpfiles; smbimap file defined by envvar _IOE_SMB_IDMAP)	SMB
/opt/dfs/global/examples/smbtab	/opt/dfslocal/var/dfs/smbtab	SMB
/opt/dfs/global/examples/upclient.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/upclient/envar	DFS
/opt/dfs/global/examples/upserver.envar	/opt/dfslocal/home/upserver/envar	DFS

Appendix E. Using OS/390 Data Sets

This appendix explains what you need to know when you use OS/390 data sets from a PC client. The OS/390 SMB server can export OS/390 record files (sequential, PDS, PDSE, and Virtual Storage Access Method (VSAM)). This makes OS/390 record data available to PC client applications. The data is presented as byte stream data.

Note: Generation Data Groups (GDG) are not supported.

Mapping Between the PC Client's View and OS/390 Record Data

In OS/390, a file is called a data set. These two terms are used interchangeably.

The files for a computer system are organized into a file system. The PC client environments use a byte file system which is a hierarchy of directories that can contain other directories or files. OS/390 record data, however, uses a nonhierarchical file system in which groups of data sets are referred to by specifying a high-level qualifier.

The OS/390 high-level qualifier can include the first (leftmost) qualifier of data sets, or the first and second qualifiers, or the first, second, and third qualifiers, and so on. For example, SMITH is the high-level qualifier for the files named SMITH.TEST.DATA and SMITH.PROJ7.SCHED, while SMITH.TEST is the high-level qualifier of SMITH.TEST.DATA and SMITH.TEST.DOCS.

Note: Only Integrated Catalog Facility (ICF) cataloged data sets are supported by the SMB server. Tape data sets are not supported.

The SMB server exports a set of files with a specified prefix as a single file system. All files with the specified prefix are shown as one level of hierarchy. If the data sets specified include partitioned data sets, a second level of hierarchy is shown.

Mapping OS/390 Data Sets onto an RFS File System

If the following OS/390 data sets exist:

```
USERA.B()      with members M1 and M2
USERA.B.C
USERA.B.C.D
USERA.X.Y()    with members M1 and M2
USERA.X.Y.Z
```

The following is an example of SMB server commands and operations to export an RFS file system that contains OS/390 data sets that begin with the prefix USERA.

1. Add an **rfs** file system to the **devtab** file.

```
* RFS devices
define_ufs 3 rfs
```

USERA

2. Add the **rfs** file system to the **dfstab** file using the same minor device number (in this example, **3**) in the device parameter (so in this example, it would be **/dev/ufs3**). Use a unique file system name (for example, **rfs3**), a file system type of **ufs** and a unique file system ID (for example, **102**). Finally, use a unique fileset ID (for example, **0,,1718**). An example **dfstab** entry might look like this:

```
/dev/ufs3 rfs3 ufs 102 0,,1718
```

Note: If you are using only SMB protocols (and not DCE DFS protocols⁸), you can use the same number for all the numeric values in a **dfstab** entry as long as the number used is unique. For example, the **dfstab** entry might look like this:

```
/dev/ufs3 rfs3 ufs 3 0,,3
```

3. Add an entry in **smbtab** for the directory you want to share. Use the same minor device number (in this example, **3**) in the device name parameter (so in this example, it would be **/dev/ufs3**). Choose a unique share name (for example, **mvsusera**), a file system type of **ufs**, a description, share permission (for example, **r/w**), maximum users (for example, **100**) and the directory name (in this example **/**). The directory name is relative to the root of the file system that the device name refers to.

```
/dev/ufs3 mvsusera ufs "mvsusera data sets" r/w 100 /
```

4. Issue the **dfsshare** command to cause the new share to be made available to PC users.

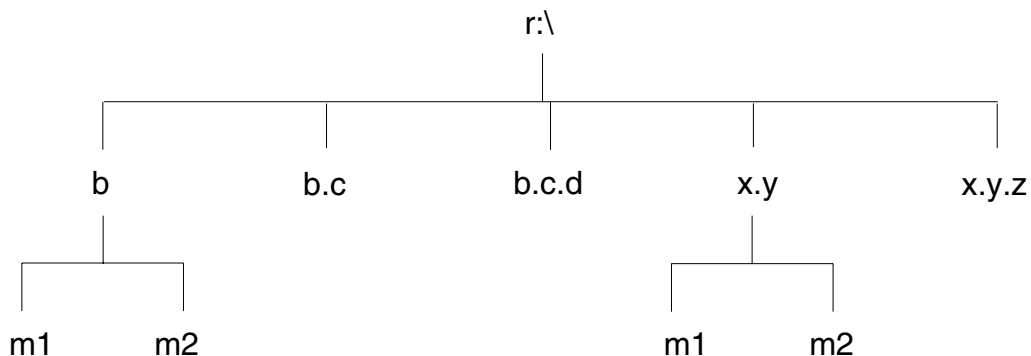
```
# dfsshare -share mvsusera
```

At this point, a PC user can connect to this share.

5. The PC user can now connect to the shared directory using the following **net use** command in Windows NT.

```
C:\>net use r: \\computer1.abc.com\mvsusera password
```

The following figure represents a view of the data set hierarchy.



This allows you to define one level of directory under the shared directory (at **r:**). Thus, you can issue **mkdir** to create a directory (stored as a PDS or PDSE) and then create files (stored as PDS or PDSE members) within that directory.

⁸ If you are using both SMB protocols and DCE DFS protocols, the file system ID must be assigned by the **fts crfldbentry** command. Refer to "Appendix C. Using Both SMB and DCE DFS" on page 151 for more information.

Alternatively, if the prefix specified in the **devtab** is an actual data set, the SMB server attempts to export the data set. If the data set is a PDS (or PDSE), it is handled as a directory and the members are exported. If it is any other type of data set, the export for that data set fails. (The name that is specified for export must be able to be handled as a directory.)

Reading, Writing, and Creating OS/390 Data Sets

You can use the SMB server to read data stored in an OS/390 data set from your PC client system. You can also write data to an OS/390 data set (stored on OS/390 DASD) from your PC client system. The OS/390 data sets appear as files on the drive letter on your PC client system.

You can create OS/390 data sets from a PC client using the SMB server. The default record data set creation attributes specified by the system administrator are used to create OS/390 data sets, unless the user overrides them. These attributes determine how the OS/390 data set is structured and where it is stored. You can override the data set creation attributes at file creation time.

Sharing Data

The sharing semantics that local OS/390 applications accessing record data expect and the semantics that PC clients expect are very different. PC clients can potentially allow multiple users to be able to open a file for write. The file integrity is protected through the use of byte range locks. Local OS/390 applications, in general, do not expect other users to be writing to the file (data set) while their application is writing.

Also, SMB clients request opportunistic locks when opening a file. Possession of an exclusive opportunistic lock means that the client can act on the file without communicating to the SMB server. The SMB server keeps track of opportunistic locks it has given out. When a PC client requests an opportunistic lock that conflicts with another opportunistic lock that the SMB server has given out, the SMB server issues a callback (requests that it be given back to the server) for that opportunistic lock. PC clients that receive callbacks give back the opportunistic lock as soon as they can. PC clients expect that all requesters are properly requesting and returning opportunistic locks. Local OS/390 applications using record data sets do not request opportunistic locks.

As a result, the SMB server must provide one set of semantics and opportunistic lock management to the PC clients and another set of semantics with no opportunistic lock management to OS/390 record data applications. In order to provide this, the SMB server must construct a "wall" between the PC clients and the OS/390 record data applications that are attempting to access the same OS/390 record file. The SMB server only allows either PC clients or OS/390 record applications to write the data, but not both. In some cases, it does allow them both to read the data.

The general technique that the SMB server uses to accomplish this is to do a dynamic allocate on any record data set that a PC client is attempting to access.

1. If the PC client is attempting to read record data, and the data set is not a PDS, the SMB server attempts a DISP=SHR allocation for the data set.
 - a. If the data set is free, then the dynamic allocate issued by the SMB server is successful and the SMB server provides the record data set to its PC clients for reading.

An OS/390 batch job that subsequently attempts to access that same record data set with an allocation of DISP=SHR successfully access the data set.

An OS/390 batch job that subsequently attempts to access that same record data set with an allocation of DISP=OLD waits for the unallocate to occur. The SMB server is notified that an OS/390 batch job is waiting for the unallocate. (The SMB server uses the Event Notification Facility (ENF) and an event supported by Global Resource Serialization (GRS) for resource contention. Refer to the *OS/390 MVS Programming: Authorized Assembler Services Guide*, GC28-1763, for information on the Event Notification Facility.) In this case, the SMB server frees up the record data set as soon as it can.

- b. If the data set is not free, the SMB server denies access to the data set. It appears to the PC clients that the data set is unavailable. (PC clients cannot wait an indefinite amount of time for the OS/390 batch job to complete.)
2. If the PC client is attempting to write record data, or the data set is a PDS, the SMB server attempts a DISP=OLD allocation for the data set.
 - a. If the data set is free, then the dynamic allocate issued by the SMB server is successful and the SMB server provides the record data set to its PC clients for writing.

An OS/390 batch job that subsequently attempts to access that same record data set with an allocation of DISP=SHR or DISP=OLD waits for the unallocate to occur. The SMB server is notified that an OS/390 batch job is waiting for the unallocate. In this case, the SMB server frees up the record data set as soon as it can.

- b. If the data set is not free, the SMB server denies access to the data set. It appears to the PC clients that the data set is unavailable. (PC clients cannot wait an indefinite amount of time for the OS/390 batch job to complete.)

ISPF users attempting to access a record data set that has been accessed by PC clients may be denied access because the SMB server may still have the data set allocated. ISPF (and TSO users) use dynamic allocation and this does not cause resource contention (and therefore no resource contention event occurs). The allocation request is simply denied. The SMB server does not recognize that the data set is being requested for use. However, the SMB server deallocates data sets that have had no activity for a period of time. This makes the data sets available to other applications such as ISPF. The time period is controlled by the `_IOE_RFS_ALLOC_TIMEOUT` environment variable. The default time period is 5 minutes. See "Appendix A. Environment Variables in SMB" on page 131 for more information on this environment variable.

In order to free up a data set right away, the user can submit a simple batch job that allocates the data set. This causes resource contention and therefore causes the SMB server to free up the data set as soon as it can. The batch job can be as simple as:

```
//JOBNAME JOB
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=IEFBR14
//DD1 DD DSN=USERA.B.C,DISP=OLD
```

Note: If you are using JES3 to protect the OS/390 data sets that are being shared with PC clients, resource contention does not occur (and therefore no resource contention event occurs). The SMB server does not recognize that the data set is being requested for use. In this case you could request that JES3 bypass these data sets (by using the DYNALDSN statement). Refer to the *OS/390 JES3 Initialization and Tuning Reference*, SC28-1803, for information on the DYNALDSN statement. Alternatively, you can use one of the other techniques that follow to free up the data set.

Another technique can be used by PC client users with the proper authority to force the SMB server to free up an OS/390 data set. A user with RACF ALTER authority to the OS/390 data set can issue the **mkdir "name,release"** command from a PC client machine. For example, **mkdir "b.c,release"** would cause the SMB server to free up the **USERA.B.C** data set as soon as it can. (If *name* is a member of a PDS or PDSE data set, the entire PDS or PDSE data set is released.)

When you issue the **mkdir** release command, a **mkdir** error message is expected. If the release was successful, the message indicates that the system attempted to access the file but the could not because the object already exists. For example,

```
E:\>mkdir "r:\b.c,release"  
A subdirectory or file r:\b.c,release already exists.
```

This is because the PC client sends this request as a make directory request. Since we are not really making a directory at the server (rather, we are doing release processing against a file or set of files), we must send an error code indicating that the object already exists back to the PC client when the release processing is completed successfully to keep the PC client from continuing with its create directory processing.

If the user does not have RACF ALTER authority to the file(s), the SMB server sends back EACH (the user does not have the required permission) to the PC client.

An operator force command (**modify dfs**) is provided to allow the operator to force the SMB server to free up an OS/390 data set if an important batch job has been waiting too long.

Forcing a Data Set to be Freed by SMB

The following operator command may be issued to force the SMB server to free a data set for access by a batch job:

```
modify dfs,send dfskern,release,data-set-name
```

where *data-set-name* is the name of the data set that the SMB server should make available.

Refreshing RFS File Names

The SMB server uses the Event Notification Facility to determine when an OS/390 batch job is attempting to allocate a data set that is currently being accessed by PC clients. When the SMB server detects this, it issues callbacks for all opportunistic locks and unallocates the data set (thus making it available to the OS/390 batch job).

Since there is no event to indicate when data sets are created, deleted, or renamed by an OS/390 batch job, the SMB server refreshes its cache of exported data set names and attributes at a regular interval. This interval is controlled by the **_IOE_RFS_STATUS_REFRESH_TIME** environment variable in the **dfskern** process. The time is specified in seconds and the default is 600 (ten minutes). In this case, a PC client listing file names when positioned at an **rfs** root directory may not see a new file created by an OS/390 job for up to ten minutes after it is created.

Note: This only affects commands that list file names and attributes. A newly created file can be directly referenced immediately after it is created.

Special OS/390 Considerations for Record Data

In addition to mapping between the PC client's view and OS/390 file systems, you should be aware of the other ways in which the OS/390 record data might differ from hierarchical byte data. These differences include:

- Selecting an OS/390 data storage format
- File size determination and time stamps
- Client caching
- OS/390 record file names.

Selecting an OS/390 Data Storage Format for Record Data

PC clients can access OS/390 data sets. These OS/390 data sets are record oriented and can be sequential, direct, VSAM, partitioned, and so forth, and also can contain variable or fixed-length records. PC client environments, however, are byte-oriented and may write or read at certain byte offsets in the file.

The SMB server can map PC client requests to most types of OS/390 data set organizations. However, how the time stamps and file size value are handled depends on the type of OS/390 data set used, and the file size processing can affect performance.

Direct reads with the data set attributes **recfm(fbs)** or **recfm(f)** can be fast because in some cases, the SMB server can determine the physical block addresses from the record offsets. The OS/390 sequential file organization with **recfm(f)** or **recfm(fbs)** on DASD allows for efficient updating or reading at any offset in the file. Other supported OS/390 access methods (for example, VSAM) may not perform as efficiently.

File Size Determination and Time Stamps

The SMB server determines how to handle the file size value and time stamps depending on the type of OS/390 data set used and the attributes used to access the data set. See "Handling of the File Size Value" on page 168 for more information of file size determination and "Handling of the Time Stamps" on page 170 for more information on handling time stamps.

PC Client Caching

OS/390 record file data is cached at PC clients in the normal manner. PC clients request and return opportunistic locks as usual. However, if the SMB server fails and restarts, and you are currently positioned within an RFS file system, then you need to change directory (**cd**) back to the root of that RFS file system before you can access files within that RFS file system.

OS/390 Record File Names

As explained in "Mapping Between the PC Client's View and OS/390 Record Data" on page 155, OS/390 record file names consist of segments separated by a dot with a maximum length of 44 characters. Each segment can be from one to eight alphanumeric characters. (Refer to the *OS/390 DFSMS: Using Data Sets* book, SC26-7339, for information on data set naming.) Each OS/390 record file appears as a byte

file to PC clients. A PDS appears as a directory with the members appearing as files within the directory. PDS member names are limited to eight characters.

OS/390 data set names are always in upper case characters. This means that file names would be displayed to PC client users in upper case and would need to be entered in upper case. There is, however, a processing attribute in the attributes file (refer to “Attributes File (rfstab)” on page 94) called **maplower**. **maplower** is the default. When this attribute is specified or defaulted in the attributes file, users can enter lower case letters for file names and they are mapped to upper case by the SMB server. Also, when the (upper case) file names are displayed to the user, they are mapped to lower case by the SMB server.

You are cautioned, however, that when the **maplower** processing attribute is in effect, you should only use lower case letters for file names. If you create a file with the name `AbCd`, it becomes an OS/390 data set named `ABCD`. When the file name is displayed to the (PC client) user, it appears as `abcd`. The file name would be displayed as a different name than the user entered when it was created.

Also, many byte file systems typically allow file names to begin with a dot. This is an invalid name for an OS/390 data set. However, a processing attribute in the attributes file called **mapleaddot** causes a leading dot in a file name to be mapped to a dollar sign in the OS/390 data set name and back to a dot for the PC client. **mapleaddot** is the default.

Creating OS/390 Files

This section describes how to create the various types of data sets (files) supported by the SMB server.

The examples shown are for an MS-DOS session. Any examples for other platforms have been indicated.

Overriding Data Set Creation Attributes

When you create an OS/390 file, default file creation attributes are applied, unless you override them. The attributes are passed to the OS/390 host.

Data set creation attributes are controlled in the following ways, in increasing order of priority:

- Default server data set creation attributes (refer to “Attributes File (rfstab)” on page 94)
- Default installation data set creation attributes, specified by the system administrator in the attributes file (refer to “Attributes File (rfstab)” on page 94)
- DFSMS data class attributes
- Data set creation attributes specified for the fileset in the **devtab** file (refer to “devtab” on page 103)
- Data set creation attributes specified at file creation, for example, in the **mkdir**, **notepad** (edit), or **copy** commands (highest priority).

Note: These data class attributes are not supported by the SMB server:

- Retention period/Expiration date
- Number of volumes

- VSAM imbed index option
- VSAM replicate index option
- CI size of data component
- Percentage of CI or CA free space.

Preparing to Create an OS/390 File

When you create an OS/390 file, you may want to specify what type of file to create.

These following types of files are supported by the SMB server:

- Physical sequential (PS)
- Direct access (DA)
- Partitioned data sets (PDS)
- Partitioned data sets extended (PDSE)
- VSAM KSDS
- VSAM ESDS
- VSAM RRDS
- Sequential Access Method (SAM) extended format data sets.

Note: Keyed access to files is not supported by PC clients.

Naming OS/390 Files:

When naming conventional OS/390 files, you must follow the OS/390 file naming conventions, as described in the *OS/390 DFSMS: Using Data Sets* book, SC26-7339.

An OS/390 file name (or data set name) can consist of one or several simple names joined so that each represents a level of qualification. For example, the OS/390 file name `DEPT58.SMITH.DATA3` is composed of three qualifiers.

The following characteristics apply to the OS/390 file name:

- Each qualifier consists of 1 to 8 alphanumeric characters, national characters (@, #, \$), or a hyphen (-).
- Each qualifier must start with an alphabetical or national character.
- The period (.) separates simple names from each other.
- Including all simple names and periods, the length of the OS/390 file name must not exceed 44 characters. Note that the OS/390 high-level qualifier that was exported (in the previous example, `USERA`) is added as a prefix to the file name. So, if you created file `r:\b.c.d.e`, the SMB server would create OS/390 data set `USERA.B.C.D.E`.
- PDS and PDSE member names can be up to 8 characters long.

Restrictions Using Alias Names for OS/390 Files:

For PDSs and PDSEs, alias names (for member names) are not supported. They are not displayed when you list the names in a directory (that is really a PDS or PDSE). You cannot access a file (member) by its alias name. If you try to create a file in the directory that has the same name as an alias, it is denied.

Creating Physical Sequential Files

Note that the following examples assume that an **rfs** fileset is mapped to the **r:** drive and the data set prefix in **devtab** is SMITH. It is also assumed that these files are translated between ASCII and EBCDIC characters by an administrator specification of:

- **_IOE_RFS_TRANSLATION=ON**, or
- Text in the **devtab** entry for **rfs** fileset, or
- Text in the **attributes** file for the **rfs** fileset.

When creating a physical sequential (PS) file, specify the **dsorg(ps)** attribute (if it is not the default already) with a file creation command, such as the **notepad** command.

```
C:\>notepad "r:\new,dsorg(ps)"
```

When you save the file using **notepad**, you have just created a new OS/390 PS file named SMITH.NEW.

When reading or changing data in a Physical Sequential file with fixed-length records in text mode, the **blankstrip** processing attribute in the attributes file controls how trailing blanks are handled. If **blankstrip** is specified in the attributes file, trailing blanks are removed from the end of each record when it is read, and blanks are padded to the end of each record when it is written. **blankstrip** is the default. If **noblankstrip** is specified in the attributes file, trailing blanks are not removed from the end of each record when it is read, and blanks are not padded to the end of each record when it is written. In this case, each record written must be the correct size or an I/O error is reported.

Note: When copying a file to an RFS file system, if you are overriding the data set creation attributes, you must specify the target file name in the **copy** command. For example:

```
C:\>copy file1 "r:\newfile1,space(2,5),cyls"
```

The previous example is correct.

```
C:\>copy file1 "r:\,space(2,5),cyls"
```

The previous example is incorrect.

Creating Direct Access Files

When creating a direct access (DA) file, specify the **dsorg(da)** attribute (if it is not the default already) with a file creation command, such as the **notepad** command.

```
C:\>notepad "r:\new,dsorg(da)"
```

You have just created a new OS/390 DA file named SMITH.NEW.

Creating PDSs and PDSEs

Partitioned data sets (PDSs) and partitioned data sets extended (PDSEs) can be used as directories, and their members are files within those directories. An illustration of the use of PDSs to act as directories is shown on page 156. For general information on PDSs and PDSEs, refer to the *OS/390 DFSMS: Using Data Sets* book, SC26-7339.

You cannot create new directories within a PDS or PDSE, due to the nature of these data structures.

Creating a PDS or PDSE -- mkdir dsntype(pds), dsntype(library):

To create a PDS or PDSE, perform the following steps:

1. If creating a PDSE, use the **mkdir** (make directory) command specifying the **dsntype(library)** attribute to create a PDSE named `smith.datalib`:

```
C:\>mkdir "r:\datalib,dsntype(library)"
```

If creating a PDS, use the **mkdir** (make directory) command specifying the **dsntype(pds)** attribute as follows:

```
C:\>mkdir "r:\datalib,dsntype(pds),dir(20)"
```

Note: You can omit specifying the **dsntype(pds)** attribute, if **pds** has been specified for the **dsntype** attribute in the attributes file on page 95.

2. You can use the **notepad** command to create a PDS or PDSE member named `smith.datalib(member1)`:

```
C:\>notepad "r:\datalib\member1"
```

Input your text, save it, and quit.

You have now created a PDS or PDSE member. You can use the **type** command to view the contents of your PDS or PDSE member.

Note: The SMB server supports a maximum of 14,562 members in a PDS or PDSE data set. When a PC read-directory request on a PDS or PDSE is processed, the SMB server returns up to 14,562 member names. Other requests, such as read and write, to individual members are not affected.

Removing a PDS or PDSE -- erase, rmdir:

To remove a PDS or PDSE, first make sure that the PDS or PDSE is empty. You can delete all members under the directory using the **erase** command. Then use the **rmdir** (remove directory) command. This example removes the `datalib` directory, and confirms its removal by a failed try to query it (**dir** is the list files command):

```
C:\>dir r:\DATALIB
Volume in drive R has no label.
Volume Serial Number is 0000-0000

Directory of r:\datalib

06/29/00  09:04p          <DIR>          .
06/29/00  10:51a          <DIR>          ..
08/01/96  12:19p                298 butcvsm
02/17/95  02:13p             1,019 copyun1d
09/20/96  09:20a                550 su2aloc
09/18/96  07:13a                548 test
07/02/99  06:49a                 0 testtext
07/02/99  07:56a                 38 testtxt3
09/20/96  07:50a                547 textaloc
          9 File(s)          3,000 bytes
```

61,440,000 bytes free

```
C:\>erase r:\datalib\  
C:\>rmdir r:\datalib  
C:\>dir r:\datalib  
File Not Found
```

Accessing PDS or PDSE Members:

There is more than one way to access PDS and PDSE members. For example, you could display the existing PDS member `smith.source(bigblue)` by entering either of these command sequences:

```
C:\>type r:\source\bigblue
```

or

```
C:\>cd r:\source  
C:\>type r:bigblue
```

These two approaches are equivalent.

Updating or Extending a PDS or PDSE Member:

The SMB server does not generally support updating or extending a PDS or PDSE member directly. To update or extend a PDS or PDSE member, a client program must follow these steps:

1. Copy the file to the client machine
2. Update or extend the copied version on the local system
3. Truncate the original OS/390 file to zero size by sending a SETATTR request with zero file size
4. Copy the updated version on the local host to OS/390 by writing request.

Some client editors follow the above steps, for example, OS/2 EPM and KEDIT editors, and the AIX and UNIX `vi` editor. Other editors do not follow the above steps, for example, OS/2 E editor and the OS/390 OEDIT editor. In the latter case the user must save the updated version into a new file. When reading or changing data in a PDS member or PDSE member with fixed-length records in text mode, the **blankstrip** processing attribute in the attributes file controls how trailing blanks are handled. If **blankstrip** is specified in the attributes file, trailing blanks are removed from the end of each record when it is read, and blanks are padded to the end of each record when it is written. **blankstrip** is the default. If **noblankstrip** is specified in the attributes file, trailing blanks are not removed from the end of each record when it is read, and blanks are not padded to the end of each record when it is written. In this case, each record written must be the correct size or an I/O error is reported.

Renaming or Moving a PDS or PDSE Member:

Record file system (RFS) files and directories can only be renamed or moved in a way that does not cause them to be moved from one directory to another.

If you are writing to a PDS or PDSE member and a timeout occurs, the timeout causes the member to close. The remaining write requests appear to append to a PDS or PDSE member. This operation is not supported and causes an I/O error. To avoid timing out, increase the timeout setting.

Wildcard Copy to a PDS or PDSE:

To ensure that a wildcard copy, `copy c:\mydir* r:\source`, to a PDS or PDSE can be completed successfully, a prior PDS member is closed and dequeued (if necessary) to allow the creation of a new member.

Limitations of Writing to a PDS:

The PDS support in the SMB server adheres to the conventions used in OS/390. For example, you cannot have more than one member of a PDS open for writing at a time. If you try to write to a member of a PDS while another member is open for write by a different user, you get a "**** Permission denied" message.

A PDS member stays open for the timeout period specified in the appropriate timeout processing attribute, **filetimeout**, or until you try to create or write to another member.

Concurrent Writes to a PDSE:

The SMB server supports concurrent writes to a PDSE. If you are writing to one member of a PDSE, another client can write to any other member in the same PDSE.

Creating VSAM Files

The SMB server supports three types of VSAM files:

- key-sequenced (KSDS)
- entry-sequenced (ESDS)
- relative record (RRDS).

However, keyed access and relative-number access to the files are not supported.

If you plan to update a VSAM data set (for example, with the **notepad** editor or with the **copy** command), the data set must have been defined with the REUSE option. Trying to write back a VSAM data set that was not defined as reusable results in an "I/O error", "failure to open", or similar error message. When you create a VSAM file through the SMB server, the REUSE option is always specified by the server.

For more information on VSAM files, refer to the *OS/390 DFSMS: Using Data Sets* book, SC26-7339.

In the following example, the attributes indicate that:

- Spanned records are allowed
- Organization is key-sequenced
- Keys are 8 bytes long and start in position 0 of each record
- Average record size is 1024
- Maximum record size is 4096
- Space is allocated for 50 records with a secondary allocation of 10
- Cross-region and cross-system share options are provided
- The file is to be created on a volume named D80CAT.

```
C:\>copy r:\ksds.old "\r:ksds.new2,spanned,dsorg(indexed),keys(8,0),
    recordsize(1k,4k),space(50,10),shareoptions(1,3),
    vol(d80cat)"
```

In the following example for creating a VSAM ESDS file, the attributes indicate that:

- Spanned records are allowed
- Organization is entry-sequenced
- Average record size is 1024
- Maximum record size is 4096
- Space is allocated for 50 records with a secondary allocation of 10
- Cross-region and cross-system share options are provided
- The file is to be created on a volume named D80CAT.

```
C:\>copy r:esds.old "r:esds.new3,spanned,dsorg(nonindexed),
  recordsize(1k,4k),space(50,10),shareoptions(1,3),
  vol(d80cat)"
```

In the following example, the attributes indicate that:

- Spanned records are not allowed
- Organization is relative record, numbered in ascending order
- Average record size is 1024
- Maximum record size is 1024
- Space is allocated for 50 records with a secondary allocation of 10
- Cross-region and cross-system share options are provided
- The file is to be created on a volume named D80CAT.

```
C:\>copy r:rrds.old "r:rrds.new4,nonspanned,dsorg(numbered),
  recordsize(1k,1k),space(50,10),shareoptions(1,3),
  vol(d80cat)"
```

Specifying Attributes Multiple Times

Specifying an attribute several times on a line does not cause an error. The line is read from left to right, and the last of any duplicate attribute is used. For example:

```
C:\>notepad "r:file,recfm(vb),recfm(fb)"
```

This results in a file created with a fixed-blocked format.

Exploiting SAM Striped Files

With SAM striping, data I/O is done in parallel to improve performance. For a file with 16 stripes, data is processed on the first track of the allocated space on the first volume (that is, the first stripe), then on the first track of the second volume, and so on for all 16 volumes. Then, processing continues with the second track of all the volumes, then the third, and so on.

The SMB server can support data set striping through the use of data class and storage class attributes that define extended format data sets. The SMB server can exploit the performance of extended format data sets by reading multiple blocks at a time when reading ahead.

For more information on striped files, see the *OS/390 DFSMS: Using Data Sets* book, SC26-7339.

Handling of the File Size Value

Many file system commands (such as: **dir**) require the file size to be returned. This appendix explains some performance and accuracy considerations in obtaining the file size value.

The meaning of the file size value returned by the SMB server and how fast the file size is returned depends on:

- Whether you use **text** or **binary** processing mode
- The type of OS/390 data set being accessed
- If the data set is system-managed
- Whether you use **fastfilesize** or **nofastfilesize** processing.

Storage of the File Size Value

Whether or not the file size value is already stored on your OS/390 system, affects how quickly files are accessed and depends on the type of OS/390 data set used.

System-Managed PS, VSAM, and PDSE Data Sets:

For system-managed data sets, text and binary file size are saved on non-volatile storage (DASD) and maintained by the SMB server for the following data set types:

- Physical sequential (including striped)
- VSAM ESDS
- VSAM KSDS
- VSAM RRDS
- PDSE members.

When the SMB server accesses a data set for the first time, it performs a read-for-size to get the text or binary file size and stores this value on DASD. Subsequent file size requests from clients do not cause the server to read for size, thus improving performance. However, when the data set is modified outside the server by a non-PC application (for example, by the TSO editor), the stored file size could be incorrect. When the data set is accessed again by the server, read-for size is done to determine the correct file size.

Migrated System-Managed Data Sets Under DFSMS/MVS V1R3:

DFSMS/MVS Version 1 Release 3 allows data set attribute accessibility for SMS managed data sets, without having to recall the data set if the data set is migrated under DFSMS/MVS V1R3. Supported SMS managed data set types:

- PS
- VSAM ESDS
- VSAM KSDS
- VSAM RRDS
- PDS
- PDSE.

The SMB server is able to obtain the attributes of a supported SMS managed migrated data set without recalling the data set. Attributes such as the record format and file size are saved to DASD. Subsequent file size requests do not cause a recall of the supported SMS managed migrated data set, thus improving performance. However, when the data set is modified outside the server by a non-PC application (for

example, by the TSO editor) before it was migrated, the stored file size could be incorrect. When the data set is accessed again by the server, a recall is done to determine the correct file size.

Non-System Managed, PDS, and DA Data Sets:

The file size value for non-system managed data sets, PDS members, and DA data sets is cached in virtual storage until released but not written to DASD. Therefore, for these types of OS/390 data sets, the file size value is regenerated after the file is released or after the server is restarted.

How the File Size Value is Generated

When a file is first accessed (for example with **dir**), usually the entire file is read to determine its size, except for when specifying the **recfm(f)** or **recfm(fbs)** attributes where the binary size can be computed without reading the file. If the file is a system-managed PS, VSAM, or PDSE member, both binary and text file sizes are stored on DASD, so that subsequent file size requests do not require the file to be read.

Binary file size can be quickly generated by using **recfm(f)** or **recfm(fbs)** to specify a fixed-length record format for the OS/390 data set. With this format type, the server pads the last logical record with binary zeros in **binary** mode processing, because OS/390 always expects complete logical records. If the application tolerates these zeros, using **recfm(f)** or **recfm(fbs)** allows the binary size to be computed quickly because the number of bytes can be computed from the number of blocks, which is stored by OS/390.

If you need the exact file size and are using **binary** mode processing, map it to a variable-format, sequential data set on DASD so that the SMB server does not need to pad a partially filled last OS/390 logical record to a record boundary.

For reading small files or the beginning of files, the read-for-size might not add any processing time. As the file is being read for size, the beginning of the file is stored in the buffers set aside by the **maxrdforszleft** site attribute, until the buffers are full. When the application reads the beginning of the file, this read is fast because it reads directly from the buffer.

OS/390 stores the number of blocks (rather than the number of bytes) in an OS/390 file. For most files, therefore, without reading the entire file, the SMB server can only give an estimate of the number of bytes in the file, not the exact number of bytes in the file.

Using fastfilesize to Avoid Read-for-Size:

If you can use an approximate file size for a PDS, PDSE, DA, or non-system managed data set, you can specify the **fastfilesize** attribute to improve performance. With this attribute, the server estimates the size without opening and reading the entire file.

PDS members For PDS and PDSE members, the **fastfilesize** attribute gets the file size from ISPF statistics if they exist; otherwise, the size of the entire PDS or PDSE data set is returned as the member size.

PS or DA data sets For PS or DA data sets, an approximate file size is calculated based on the device characteristics, the number of disk tracks in use, and the block size of the data set.

VSAM For non-system-managed VSAM data sets, the estimated size using **fastfilesize** is the size of the data set.

The **fastfilesize** attribute speeds up data set access by calculating approximate file sizes during data set access. Use this only when you are browsing through files (using the **ls** UNIX command or the **type** OS/2 command, for example) because some commands (such as **cp** or **copy**) might not work correctly if **fastfilesize** is set. When modifying or copying a data set, the **nofastfilesize** attribute should be used to ensure accurate results.

nofastfilesize:

When you use the default, **nofastfilesize** attribute, the SMB server reads the entire file or member to get the file size. It stores the file size value in cache until release. Using this attribute might cause a delay when first accessing very large data sets.

Handling of the Time Stamps

UNIX file attributes define the following time stamps:

atime The last time the file was accessed (read)
mtime The last time the file was modified (write)
ctime The last time the file status was changed (chmod)

The SMB server handles time stamps differently for these types of data sets:

- System-managed PS data sets and system-managed VSAM data sets
- Direct Access data sets and non-system managed PS data sets
- Non-system managed VSAM data sets
- PDS and PDSE members.

Time Stamps for System-Managed VSAM and PS Data Sets

For system-managed PS data sets and system-managed VSAM data sets, *atime* and *mtime* are fully maintained, and the *ctime* is set to the *mtime*.

Time Stamps for Non-System Managed PS and DS Data Sets

For non-system managed PS and DA data sets, consider the following:

- How time stamps are stored
- The requirements of your workstation programs
- The type of OS/390 data set used to store the file.

Storing Time Stamps:

For non-system managed PS and DA data sets, the SMB server temporarily stores the time stamps in virtual storage, but not on DASD. These cached attributes are purged when the file is released or when the server is restarted. When the file is accessed again, the time stamps are regenerated.

Client Program Requirements:

Some workstation-based utilities (such as **make**) rely on date and time stamps. For example, **make** checks the update time of the object file with the source file and recompiles if the source has been updated. Before storing these types of files using the OS/390 server, examine them before moving them to ensure that these attributes are unimportant. In an environment which relies on such utilities, use HFS

Generating Time Stamps:

This is how the SMB server generates *atime* and *mtime* for non-system managed PS and DA data sets from the OS/390 dates:

$$\begin{aligned} atime &= mtime = reference_date + time_increment \\ ctime &= creation_date + time_increment \end{aligned}$$

time_increment is either the server local time or 23:59 hours. If *reference_date* or *creation_date* is equal to the server local date, the server local time is added. Otherwise, a fixed value of 23 hours and 59 minutes is added.

If *reference_date* = 0 (that is, the file has not yet been referenced), *atime* and *mtime* are set equal to *ctime*.

Time Stamps for Non-System Managed VSAM Data Sets

The time stamps for these types of data sets are set to the current time.

Time Stamps for PDSs and PDSEs

An OS/390 PDS data set can act as a directory. Members of the PDS are files within the directory. When the directory is accessed by the client, the UNIX times are expected for each file.

Ordinarily, OS/390 does not maintain time stamps for members of a PDS. The UNIX time stamps here are generated from the OS/390 creation and reference dates of the PDS data set containing the members. This is how the time stamps for PDS members are generated:

$$\begin{aligned} atime &= mtime = reference_date + time_increment \\ ctime &= creation_date + time_increment \end{aligned}$$

ISPF is an OS/390 base element that does maintain some additional statistics for each member. They include the creation date and the last modification date and time.

If the ISPF time stamps are present for a PDS member, this is how the server generates the time stamps and initializes the UNIX times:

$$\begin{aligned} atime &= mtime = modification_date + modification_time \\ ctime &= ISPF_creation_date + time_increment \end{aligned}$$

time_increment is either server local time or 23:59 hours as described for non-system managed PS and DA data sets.

The server also creates new ISPF statistics for PDS members created by the clients. The ISPF statistics are created even if existing members do not have statistics.

The time stamp information is saved in the PDS directory according to ISPF conventions. If `STATS=ON` was specified when the member was created, the server uses them to get more accurate attributes. Even if `STATS=ON` was not specified originally, the server writes back new time stamp information if the member is modified from the workstation.

Time stamp generation for a PDSE member is identical to that of a PDS with one exception. Accurate `mtime` of a PDSE member is returned to a client as the result of a file attribute request for that PDSE member.

Setting Time Stamps

PC clients can issue commands that result in `SETATTR` requests (such as, Windows Explorer, right-click on file, and Choose Properties) to set the `atime` and `mtime` for a system-managed PS or VSAM data set. For PDSE members, setting `mtime` is allowed, but setting `atime` is not supported. PDSE member `mtime` is also maintained by PDSE access methods, so it is modified when a TSO user modifies the PDSE member.

Appendix F. Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A. IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your company or send inquires, in writing, to:

IBM World Trade Asia Corporation
Licensing
2-31 Roppongi 3-chome, Minato-ku
Tokyo 106, Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes are incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation
Mail Station P300
2455 South Road
Poughkeepsie, NY 12601-5400
U.S.A.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this information and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement, or any equivalent agreement between us.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

If you are viewing this information softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.

Programming Interface Information

This *OS/390 Distributed File Service SMB Administration Guide and Reference* documents information that is NOT intended to be used as Programming Interfaces of Distributed File Service.

Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, or other countries, or both:

AIX	DFSMS/MVS	DFSMSHsm
IBM	IBMLink	Infoprint
Language Environment	Library Reader	MVS
OS/2	OS/390	RACF
SecureWay		

Microsoft, Windows, and Windows NT are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Bibliography

This bibliography lists and provides a brief description of each publication in the OS/390 Distributed File Service Library.

Administration

- *OS/390 Distributed File Service DFS Configuring and Getting Started*, SC28-1722

This book helps system and network administrators configure the OS/390 Distributed File Service.

- *OS/390 Distributed File Service DFS Administration Guide and Reference*, SC28-1720

This book introduces the Distributed File Service concepts to system and network administrators and provides an in-depth understanding of the Distributed File Service, its uses and benefits. This book also provides reference information for the commands and files used by system and network administrators to work with the Distributed File Service.

Reference

- *OS/390 Distributed File Service Messages and Codes*, SC28-1724

This book provides detailed explanations and recovery actions for the messages, status codes, and exception codes issued by the OS/390 Distributed File Service.

You can also refer to the following OS/390 Infoprint Server books:

- *OS/390 Infoprint Server Operation and Administration*, S544-5693

This book describes how to operate Infoprint Server and all of its components, and how to set up and maintain the new consolidated Printer Inventory, which contains all printer information required by Infoprint Server and its components.

- *OS/390 Infoprint Server User's Guide*, S544-5692

Describes for the end user how to submit print jobs to Infoprint Server using JCL, TCP/IP commands, the new AOPRINT JCL procedure, OS/390 UNIX System Services commands (lp, lpstat, cancel), the Printer Port Monitor for Windows, and Internet Printing (IPP).

Index

Special Characters

- # (pound sign), xii
- \ (backslash), xii
- _EUV_AUTOLOG, 131
- _IOE_DAEMONS_IN_AS, 133
- _IOE_DFS_MODIFY_PATH, 133
- _IOE_DIRECTORY_CACHE_SIZE, 133
- _IOE_DYNAMIC_EXPORT, 40, 133
- _IOE_EXPORT_TIMEOUT, 42, 134
- _IOE_HFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE, 134
- _IOE_HFS_TRANSLATION, 44, 110, 135
- _IOE_INHERIT_TRANSLATION, 41
- _IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT, 33, 52, 135
- _IOE_PROTOCOL_RPC, 136
- _IOE_PROTOCOL_SMB, 136
- _IOE_RFS_ALLOC_TIMEOUT, 136
- _IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE, 101, 136
- _IOE_RFS_STATUS_REFRESH_TIME, 137
- _IOE_RFS_TRANSLATION, 137
- _IOE_RFS_WORKER_THREADS, 137
- _IOE_SMB_BROWSE_INTERVAL, 29, 137
- _IOE_SMB_CALLBACK_POOL, 137
- _IOE_SMB_CLEAR_PW, 52, 129, 138
- _IOE_SMB_COMPUTER_NAME, 29, 138
- _IOE_SMB_CROSS_MOUNTS, 41, 139
- _IOE_SMB_DESCRIPTION, 139
- _IOE_SMB_DIR_PERMS, 139
- _IOE_SMB_DOMAIN_NAME, 29, 139
- _IOE_SMB_FILE_PERMS, 140
- _IOE_SMB_IDLE_TIMEOUT, 140
- _IOE_SMB_IDMAP, 27, 31, 32, 116, 140
- _IOE_SMB_MAIN_POOL, 141
- _IOE_SMB_MAXXMT, 141
- _IOE_SMB_NT_SMBS, 141
- _IOE_SMB_OCSF, 141
- _IOE_SMB_OPLOCK_TIMEOUT, 141
- _IOE_SMB_OPLOCKS, 142
- _IOE_SMB_PRIMARY_WINS, 29, 142
- _IOE_SMB_PROTOCOL_LEVEL, 142
- _IOE_SMB_RAW, 142
- _IOE_SMB_SCOPE, 142
- _IOE_SMB_SECONDARY_WINS, 29, 143
- _IOE_SMB_TOKEN_FILE_MAX, 143
- _IOE_SMB_WINS_PROXY, 29, 143
- _IOE_TKCGLUE_CACHE_SIZE, 143
- _IOE_TKM_MAX_TOKENS, 143
- _IOE_TKMGLUE_SERVER_THREADS, 144
- _IOE_VM_CACHE_SIZE, 144
- _IOE_VM_MAX_FILES, 144
- _IOE_VNODE_CACHE_SIZE, 144

A

- accessing
 - data, 67
 - HFS, 71
 - PDS, 165
 - PDSE, 165
 - printers, 75
 - RFS, 72
- accessing shared directories
 - OS/2, 70
 - Windows 2000, 68
 - Windows 9x, 67
- accessing shared printers
 - Windows 2000, 77
 - Windows 9x, 75
 - Windows NT, 76
- adding printers
 - Windows 2000, 79
 - Windows 9x, 78
 - Windows NT, 79
- attributes
 - specifying, 167
- audience
 - PC users, 1
 - system administrators, 1
- authorization, 14
 - HFS, 45
 - print data, 56
 - sharing files, 45, 46
- automount
 - HFS, 40

B

- bibliography, 175

C

- caching
 - DFS client, 160
- callable services, 45
- case sensitivity
 - considerations, 71
 - directory name, 71
 - file name, 71
- changing
 - environment variables, 27
 - Infoprint Server DLL, 28
 - mappings, 27
 - owner of HFS file, 149
 - shared directories, 27
 - shared printers, 27
- command structure, 4
- commands
 - df, 39
 - dfsexport, 122
 - dfsshare, 6, 126
 - Distributed File Service SMB, 121

- elements, 5
- modify, 22
- modify dfs, 21
- modify dfs processes, 86
- net use, 33
- OS/390 system, 85
- shortcuts, 5
- smbpw, 129
- start, 21
- start dfs, 89
- stop, 23
- stop dfs, 91
- configuration, 13
- configuration file
 - considerations, 11
- considerations
 - case sensitivity, 71
 - configuration file, 11
 - migration, 7
 - networking, 29
 - record data, 160
- conventions
 - this book, xi
- creating
 - configuration files, 16
 - direct access files, 163
 - OS/390 files, 161
 - PDS, 163
 - PDSE, 163
 - physical sequential files, 163
 - reg file, 146
 - shared directory, 37, 38
 - shared printer, 55
 - smbidmap, 31
 - VSAM files, 166
- creating shared directory
 - steps, 38, 48
- crossing
 - local mount points, 151
- customizable files, 153

D

- Daemon Configuration File, 20, 25
- DASD I/O activity, 150
- data
 - accessing, 67
- data set creation attributes
 - overriding, 161
- DCE_START_SOCKET_NAME, 131
- defining
 - SMB administrators, 16
- definition
 - # (pound sign), xii
 - \ (backslash), xii
 - Server Message Block (SMB), xi
- deleting

- mapping entries, 32
- determining
 - file size, 160
 - SMB user ID, 33
 - user IDs, 32
- devtab, 37, 94, 103
- df command, 39
- DFS client
 - caching, 160
- DFS server address
 - stopping, 23
- DFS server address space, 19
- DFS server daemons
 - starting, 21, 25
 - stopping, 21
 - viewing, 24
- dfs_cpfiles, 16
 - example, 17
- dfscntl
 - starting DFS server daemons, 26
 - using -nodfs option, 27
- dfsexport, 122
- dfskern
 - process, 31
- dfskern process, 20
- dfsshare, 6, 126
- dfstab, 37, 107
 - fileset IDs, 151
- direct access files
 - creating, 163
- directories
 - shared, 4
- directory
 - HFS, 71
 - RFS, 72
- directory name
 - case sensitivity, 71
- displaying printer queue
 - steps, 80
- Distributed File Service SMB
 - commands, 121
- Distributed File Service SMB files, 93
- DNS, Windows 2000
 - steps, 61
- DNS, Windows 9x
 - steps, 57
- DNS, Windows NT
 - steps, 59
- domain name service (DNS), 29
- dynamic export
 - HFS, 40

E

- elements
 - commands, 5
- encrypted passwords, 152

- end of line characters
 - text files, 149
- envvar, 109
- environment variables, 131
 - _EUV_AUTOLOG, 131
 - _IOE_DAEMONS_IN_AS, 19, 133
 - _IOE_DFS_MODIFY_PATH, 133
 - _IOE_DIRECTORY_CACHE_SIZE, 133
 - _IOE_DYNAMIC_EXPORT, 40, 133
 - _IOE_EXPORT_TIMEOUT, 42, 134
 - _IOE_HFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE, 134
 - _IOE_HFS_TRANSLATION, 44, 110, 135
 - _IOE_INHERIT_TRANSLATION, 41
 - _IOE_MVS_DFSDFLT, 33, 52, 135
 - _IOE_PROTOCOL_RPC, 136
 - _IOE_PROTOCOL_SMB, 136
 - _IOE_RFS_ALLOC_TIMEOUT, 136
 - _IOE_RFS_ATTRIBUTES_FILE, 101, 136
 - _IOE_RFS_STATUS_REFRESH_TIME, 137
 - _IOE_RFS_TRANSLATION, 137
 - _IOE_RFS_WORKER_THREADS, 137
 - _IOE_SMB_BROWSE_INTERVAL, 29, 137
 - _IOE_SMB_CALLBACK_POOL, 137
 - _IOE_SMB_CLEAR_PW, 52, 129, 138
 - _IOE_SMB_COMPUTER_NAME, 29, 138
 - _IOE_SMB_CROSS_MOUNTS, 41, 139
 - _IOE_SMB_DESCRIPTION, 139
 - _IOE_SMB_DIR_PERMS, 139
 - _IOE_SMB_DOMAIN_NAME, 29, 139
 - _IOE_SMB_FILE_PERMS, 140
 - _IOE_SMB_IDLE_TIMEOUT, 140
 - _IOE_SMB_IDMAP, 27, 31, 116, 140
 - _IOE_SMB_MAIN_POOL, 141
 - _IOE_SMB_MAXXMT, 141
 - _IOE_SMB_NT_SMB, 141
 - _IOE_SMB_OCSF, 141
 - _IOE_SMB_OPLOCK_TIMEOUT, 141
 - _IOE_SMB_OPLOCKS, 142
 - _IOE_SMB_PRIMARY_WINS, 29, 142
 - _IOE_SMB_PROTOCOL_LEVEL, 142
 - _IOE_SMB_RAW, 142
 - _IOE_SMB_SCOPE, 142
 - _IOE_SMB_SECONDARY_WINS, 29, 143
 - _IOE_SMB_TOKEN_FILE_MAX, 143
 - _IOE_SMB_WINS_PROXY, 29, 143
 - _IOE_TKCLUE_CACHE_SIZE, 143
 - _IOE_TKM_MAX_TOKENS, 143
 - _IOE_TKMGLUE_SERVER_THREADS, 144
 - _IOE_VM_CACHE_SIZE, 144
 - _IOE_VM_MAX_FILES, 144
 - _IOE_VNODE_CACHE_SIZE, 144
- changing, 27
- DCE_START_SOCKET_NAME, 131
- IOE_INHERIT_TRANSLATION, 135
- LIBPATH, 131
- NLSPATH, 132

- TZ, 132
- examples
 - daemon configuration file, 26
 - dfs_cpfiles, 17
 - dfsshare, 6
- exploiting
 - SAM striped files, 167
- export process, 20
- exporting
 - files, 35
- extending
 - PDS, 165
- F**
- features
 - SMB, 3
- file
 - LMHOSTS, 30
 - smbidmap, 31
- file data
 - translation, 44
- file name
 - case sensitivity, 71
- file name considerations
 - HFS, 71
 - RFS, 72
- file names
 - record, 160
- file size
 - determining, 160
- file size value
 - generating, 169
 - handling, 168
 - storage, 168
- files
 - customizable, 153
 - devtab, 37, 94, 103
 - dfstab, 37, 107
 - Distributed File Service SMB, 93
 - envvar, 109
 - exporting, 35
 - hfsattr, 110
 - ioepdcf, 20, 112
 - sharing, 35
 - smbidmap, 116
 - smbtab, 37, 115, 118
 - VSAM, 166
- finding
 - SMB server, 63
- finding OS/390 SMB server
 - OS/2, 65
 - Windows 2000, 63
 - Windows 3.11, 64
 - Windows 9x, 63
 - Windows NT, 63
- format

- commands, 4
- free space
 - HFS, 46

G

- generating
 - file size value, 169
 - time stamps, 171

H

- handling
 - file size value, 168
 - time stamps, 170

HFS

- accessing, 71
- authorization, 45
- automount, 40
- directory, 71
- dynamic export, 40
- file name considerations, 71
- free space, 46
- symbolic links, 71

- hfsattr, 110

- home directories, 42

I

- Infoprint Server, 3

- Infoprint Server DLL

 - changing, 28

- installation, 13

- IOE_INHERIT_TRANSLATION, 135

- ioepdcf, 20, 112

L

- LIBPATH, 131

- LMHOSTS file, 30

- LMHOSTS file, Windows 2000
 - steps, 62

- LMHOSTS file, Windows 9x
 - steps, 59, 60, 62

- LMHOSTS file, Windows NT
 - steps, 60

- local mount points
 - crossing, 151

- locating
 - SMB server, 57

M

- managing
 - SMB processes, 19

- mapping
 - data sets onto RFS file system, 155
 - PC view and record data, 155
 - shared directory, 67, 68

- UNC, 68, 69
 - user IDs, 31

- mapping entries
 - deleting, 32
 - modifying, 32

- mappings
 - changing, 27

- migration
 - considerations, 7
 - new SMB release, 8
 - V2R10, 8
 - V2R8, 7
 - V2R9, 7

- modify command, 22

- modify dfs, 21

- modify dfs processes, 86

- modifying
 - mapping entries, 32

- moving
 - PDS, 165
 - PDSE, 165

N

- naming
 - OS/390 files, 162

- net use command, 33

- networking
 - considerations, 29

- NLSPATH, 132

O

- OCSF (Open Cryptographic Services Facility), 13

- Open Cryptographic Services Facility (OCSF), 13

- organization
 - this book, xi

- OS/2
 - accessing shared directories, 70
 - finding OS/390 SMB server, 65
 - using OS/390 SMB server, 63

- OS/390
 - using data sets, 155

- OS/390 files
 - creating, 161
 - naming, 162
 - restrictions, 162

- OS/390 Infoprint Server, 4

- OS/390 SMB, 3

- OS/390 system
 - commands, 85

- overriding
 - data set creation attributes, 161

- overview
 - SMB, 3

P

password encryption, 51

PDS

- accessing, 165
- creating, 163
- extending, 165
- moving, 165
- removing, 164
- renaming, 165
- time stamps, 171
- updating, 165

PDS member names, 20

PDSE

- accessing, 165
- creating, 163
- moving, 165
- removing, 164
- renaming, 165
- time stamps, 171
- updating, 165

Personal Computer (PC) users, 1

physical sequential files

- creating, 163

print data

- authorization, 56
- translation, 56

printer queue

- displaying, 80

printer types, 81

printers

- accessing, 75
- remote, 3
- shared, 4
- sharing, 55

process

- dfskern, 31

processes

- dfskern, 20
- export, 20
- SMB, 4

R

receiving help, 6

record

- file names, 160

record data

- considerations, 160
- data storage format, 160

refreshing

- RFS file names, 159

remote

- printers, 3

remote printers, 3

removing

- PDS, 164
- PDSE, 164
- shared directory, 40, 49

shared printer, 56

renaming

- PDS, 165
- PDSE, 165

restrictions

- OS/390 files, 162

RFS

- accessing, 72
- directory, 72
- file name considerations, 72

RFS file names

- refreshing, 159

S

SAM striped files

- exploiting, 167

saving

- file to HFS, 149

selecting

- data storage format for record data, 160

Server Message Block (SMB), 3

setting

- _IOE_SMB_IDMAP environment variables, 32
- time stamps, 172

setting up

- SMB server, 57

shared directories, 4

- changing, 27

shared directory

- creating, 38
- mapping, 67, 68
- removing, 40, 49

shared printer

- creating, 55
- removing, 56

shared printers, 4

- changing, 27

sharing

- data, 157
- files, 35
- printers, 55

sharing files

- authorization, 45, 46

shortcuts

- commands, 5

single sign-on, 152

SMB

- features, 3
- file/print server, 13
- overview, 3
- processes, 4

SMB (Server Message Block), 3

SMB administrators

- defining, 16

SMB File/Print Server, 13

SMB processes

- managing, 19
- SMB server
 - finding, 63
 - locating, 57
 - setting up, 57
- SMB shared directory
 - using, 67
- SMB user ID
 - determining, 33
- smbidmap, 116
 - creating, 31
- smbidmap file, 31
- smbpw, 129
- smbtab, 37, 115, 118
- specifying
 - attributes, 167
- start command, 21
- start dfs, 89
- starting
 - DFS server daemons, 21, 25
- steps
 - configuration, 13
 - creating shared directory, 38, 48
 - dfs_cpfiles, 16
 - displaying printer queue, 80
 - DNS, Windows 2000, 61
 - DNS, Windows NT, 59
 - LMHOSTS file, Windows 2000, 62
 - LMHOSTS file, Windows 9x, 59, 60, 62
 - LMHOSTS file, Windows NT, 60
 - sharing printers, 55
 - starting DFS server daemons, 23
 - translating file data, 44
 - Windows 2000, accessing shared printers, 77
 - Windows 2000, adding printers, 79
 - Windows 3.1, accessing shared printers, 77
 - Windows 9x, accessing shared printers, 75
 - Windows 9x, adding printers, 78
 - Windows NT, accessing shared printers, 76
 - Windows NT, adding printers, 79
 - WINS, Windows 2000, 61
 - WINS, Windows 9x, 58
 - WINS, Windows NT, 59
- stop command, 23
- stop dfs, 91
- stopping
 - DFS server address, 23
 - DFS server daemons, 21
- storage
 - file size value, 168
- storing
 - time stamps, 170
- symbolic links, 72
 - HFS, 71
- system administrators, 1

T

- text files
 - end of line characters, 149
- time stamps, 160
 - generating, 171
 - handling, 170
 - PDS, 171
 - PDSE, 171
 - setting, 172
 - storing, 170
- translation
 - file data, 44
 - print data, 56
- types of printers, 81
- types of users, 16
- TZ, 132

U

- UNC
 - mapping, 68, 69
- universal naming convention (UNC), 68, 69
- Universal Naming Convention (UNC) mapping, 4
- UNIX system services
 - df command, 39
- updating
 - PDS, 165
 - PDSE, 165
 - registry, 145
- user IDs
 - determining, 32
 - mapping, 31
- using
 - dfs_cpfiles, 16
 - modify dfs, 23
 - nodfs option, 27
 - OS/390 data sets, 155
 - SMB shared directory, 67
 - this book, xi
- using find computer
 - Windows 9x or NT, 64
- using OS/390 SMB Server
 - OS/2, 63
 - Windows 2000, 61
 - Windows 3.11, 63
 - Windows 9x, 57
 - Windows NT, 59
- using search computer
 - Windows 2000, 64
- using SMB and DCE DFS, 151
 - fileset IDs in dfstab, 151
- using the SMB server, 145
 - client does not communicate, 145
 - creating reg file, 146
 - updating the registry, 145

V

- viewing
 - DFS server daemons, 24
- VSAM files
 - creating, 166

W

- Windows 2000
 - accessing shared directories, 68
 - accessing shared printers, 77
 - adding printers, 79
 - finding OS/390 SMB server, 63
 - using OS/390 SMB Server, 61
 - using search computer, 64
- Windows 2000, accessing shared printers
 - steps, 77
- Windows 2000, adding printers
 - steps, 79
- Windows 3.1, accessing shared printers
 - steps, 77
- Windows 3.11
 - finding OS/390 SMB server, 64
 - using OS/390 SMB Server, 63
- Windows 95
 - net use command, 148
 - net view command, 149
- Windows 9x
 - accessing shared directories, 67
 - accessing shared printers, 75
 - adding printers, 78
 - finding OS/390 SMB server, 63
- Windows 9x or NT
 - using find computer, 64
- Windows 9x, accessing shared printers
 - steps, 75
- Windows 9x, adding printers
 - steps, 78
- windows internet naming service (WINS), 29
- Windows NT
 - accessing shared printers, 76
 - adding printers, 79
 - finding OS/390 SMB server, 63
 - using OS/390 SMB Server, 59
- Windows NT, accessing shared printers
 - steps, 76
- Windows NT, adding printers
 - steps, 79
- WINS, Windows 2000
 - steps, 61
- WINS, Windows 9x
 - steps, 58
- WINS, Windows NT
 - steps, 59

Readers' Comments

OS/390
Distributed File Service SMB
Administration Guide and Reference
Version 2 Release 10.0

Publication No. SC24-5882-03

You may use this form to report errors, to suggest improvements, or to express your opinion on the appearance, organization, or completeness of this book.

Date: _____

IBM may use or distribute whatever information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Report system problems to your IBM representative or the IBM branch office serving you. U.S. Customers can order publications by calling the IBM Software Manufacturing Solutions at **1-800-879-2755**.

In addition to using this postage-paid form, you may send your comments by:

FAX	1-607-752-2327	IBMLink	GDLVME(PUBRCF)
Internet	pubrcf@vnet.ibm.com		

Would you like a reply? ___ **YES** ___ **NO** If yes, please tell us the type of response you prefer.

___ Electronic address: _____

___ FAX number: _____

___ Mail: (Please fill in your name and address below.)

Name _____ Address _____

Company or Organization _____

Phone No. _____

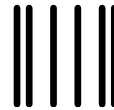


Cut or Fold
Along Line

Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

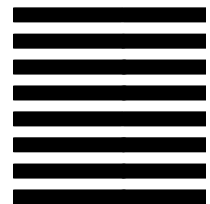
Fold and Tape



BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 40 ARMONK, NEW YORK

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED IN THE
UNITED STATES



POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

Department G60
International Business Machines Corporation
Information Development
1701 North Street
ENDICOTT, NY 13760-5553



Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape

Cut or Fold
Along Line

